

I. N. VERESHCHAGINA
O. V. AFANASYEVA

ENGLISH



**Student's
Book**



PROSVESHCHENIYE
PUBLISHERS

Past Indefinite

Ved/V₂
did

+ Tom **rode** a bicycle 3 days ago.



- Pat **didn't work** on the computer yesterday.



? Did you **train** much last month?



WHEN?
(WHERE?)

yesterday
last
last year (month, week)
ago
3 days (weeks) ago
in 1995
the other day
the day before yesterday

Past Continuous

was/were + Ving



Tom **was riding** a bicycle *while his friends were playing football.*



Pat **was not working** on the computer *when the telephone rang.*



Where **were** you **training** at 3 o'clock?



WHEN?

exact time in the past

a) at ... o'clock

b) ... while ... was/were doing

c) ... when ... was/were doing

LESSON 1

PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION¹



family



name,
address,
telephone number



character,
appearance²



likes and
dislikes



date of birth,
place of birth,
age



occupation

LET US REVIEW

1 You meet a boy near the school. He is a new pupil in your class:

- ask him to answer your questions;
- tell your best friend all you've learnt about the new boy.

- What's your name (your surname)?
- Where are you from? How old are you?
- Where and when were you born?
- When is your birthday?
- What's your address and telephone number?
- What are your likes and dislikes?
- How large is your family?
- What does your father (mother, etc.³) do?



¹ Personal Identification [ˈpɜːsnəl aɪdɪntɪfɪˈkeɪʃn] — ад. Все о себе

² appearance [əˈpiərəns] — внешность

³ etc. — et cetera — лат. и так далее

- 2 Here are two forms.¹ The first one is Boris'.² Look at it and say all you can about him. Then talk about yourself.

name Boris
surname Petrov
age 12
date of birth 3.3.84
place of birth Nizhny Novgorod
address 12, Green Street
Paulovskoye
telephone 33-46-76
occupation student
likes sports, games
dislikes singing, dancing

name
surname
age
date of birth
place of birth
address

telephone
occupation
likes
dislikes

- 3 A group of boys and girls is leaving for London. They don't know each other and have just met. What do you think they are saying to each other? Choose the possible questions/sentences from the list.

- Hi! (Hello!)
- Do you like the Russian winter?
- Nice to meet you.
- How old are you?
- Is it quiet in the street?
- I am fine.
- What's your address?
- How old is your cousin?
- Where are you from?
- What's your name?
- Where do you live?
- Pleased to meet you.
- Have you got a brother?
- How are you?

¹ form [fɔ:m] — анкета

² Boris' = Boris's

- 4 Say what their telephone numbers are.

Nina: 454-17-36
Klim: 332-14-02
Vova: 430-29-50

Larisa: 953-00-22
Ksana: 955-38-40
Andrei: 275-82-20

- 5 Listen to the text, ☒ 1, and say which is Boris's (Vera's, Susan's, Lisa's and Paul's) telephone number.

Boris: 112-1895	or	✓ 112-8095
Vera: ✓ 271-1913	or	271-0930
Susan: 275-3618 ✓	or	275-2618
Lisa: 454-2822	or	✓ 444-2822
Paul: 925-1414	or	✓ 925-4414

BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR

The Indefinite Tenses

to have (have got)

Present		Past		Future	
I you we you they	have = have got	I you he she it we you they	had	I we	will (shall) have
he she it	has = has got			you he she it you they	will have

I have (or have got) three cousins.
My daughter has got (or has) two dogs.
The room's got (or has) two windows.
We had many animals on the farm.
They will have a car next month.

Present		Past		Future	
I you we you they	haven't= haven't got= have no= don't have	I you he she it we you they	had no= didn't have	I we	won't (shan't) have
he she it	hasn't=hasn't got=has no= doesn't have			you he she it you they	won't have

I haven't got a flat. I don't have any brothers. I haven't any pets. I have no milk in the fridge.

He hasn't got a car. He doesn't have a car. He has no car. You won't have much work to do tomorrow.

They didn't have any classes yesterday. They had no children.

?

Present			Past			Future		
Have	I	...?		I		Will (Shall)	I we	have...?
Have	you	got...?		you			you	
	we			he			he	
	you	have...?	Did	she	have...?	Will	she	have...?
Do	they			it			it	
Has	he	got...?		we			you	
	she			you			they	
Does	it	have...?		they				

Has Ann got a car? = Does Ann have a car? = Has Ann a car?

What **have** you **got** in your bag? = What **do** you **have** in your bag?
 = What **have** you in your bag?
 How much money **did** they **have**?
 Will you **have** time to finish it?

- 6 Say these sentences using the verb *have* (*have got*). Try and use as many versions¹ as possible.

EXAMPLE: There is a wide door in the room.
 The room **has** (has got) a wide door.

1. There are many actors in this theatre.
2. There are not any wide streets in this town.
3. Are there any wooden cups in the museum?
4. The woman's voice is very weak.
5. There is no tower in the old square.
6. There won't be any new settlements in this place.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

- | | |
|--|------------|
| 1) First name, then surname: Tom Brown | |
| (never Brown-Tom) | |
| 2) You can say Mr John Smith or Mr Smith | |
| (but never Mr-John) | |
| 3) Mr ² | Mr Brown |
| Mrs | Mrs Brown |
| Miss | Miss Brown |
| Ms | Ms Brown |

+ surname

- 7 Using the model say who they are.

EXAMPLE: Her name is Angela.
 Her surname is West.

¹ version ['vɜːʃn] — вариант

² If you don't know what Mr, Mrs, Miss and Ms stand for consult your vocabulary.

She is not married.¹
She is Miss Angela West.

1. His surname is Webster.
His name is Adam.
He is 20, not married.
He is
2. The brothers' surname is Brown.
Their names are Tom and Ben.
They are forty years old.
They are
3. Her surname is Poster.
Her name is Nell.
She is 35, nobody knows if she is married.
She is
4. Her name is Betty.
Her surname is Williams.
She is not married.
She is

8 Look at the pictures and put *Mr*, *Mrs*, *Miss*, and *Ms* before the following surnames:



1. ... Brown, age 21, not married.

2. ... White, age 65, married.



3. ... Green, age 17, not married.



4. ... Barlow, age 40 (*no information if she is married or not*).

5. ... Bentley, age 31, married.



¹ married ['maɪnd] — замужем, женат

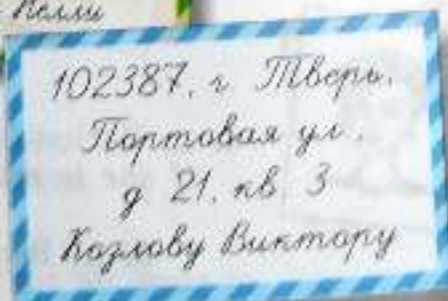
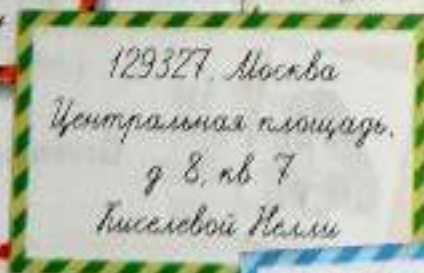
LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!



First name _____
Surname _____
Address: _____
Flat _____
House N° _____
Street _____
City/Town _____
Country _____

- 9 Look at the letters. Say in English where Peter, Michael, Boris, Nelly and Victor live.

EXAMPLE: Boris lives at number 16 Lesnaya Road, Petrovskoye, Russia.



- 10 Could you say your address in English? Try and do it.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

What's your job? (*most commonly used*¹)

What do you do? (*most commonly used*)

What's your profession?²

What's your occupation?

What are you?

(*least commonly used*³)

Чем вы занимаетесь? =

Кто вы по профессии? =

Кем вы работаете? =

Какая у вас работа?

- 11 Look at the pictures and **a)** say what their jobs are; **b)** divide all the jobs into 3 columns: -er, -or, -man.



¹ most commonly used — наиболее часто употребляется

² profession = occupation = job

³ least commonly used — наименее употребительное

dancer, doctor, policeman, sailor, postman, singer, tailor, milkman, actor, driver, fisherman

- 12 Read the sentences to guess the meaning of the following jobs.

A **baker** ['beɪkə] is a person who makes bread.

A **butcher** ['bʊtʃə] is a person who sells meat.

A **grocer** ['grəʊsə] is a person who sells sugar, flour, salt, etc.

A **greengrocer** ['grɪn,grəʊsə] is a person who sells fresh vegetables and fruit.

A **nurse** [nɜ:s] is a person who works in hospitals and helps doctors.

A **salesman** ['seɪlzmən] is a person who sells different things.

A **secretary** ['sekɾətɪ] is a person who works in the office and helps her boss with letters and other papers.

A **typist** ['taɪpɪst] is a person who types¹ letters and other papers.

- 13 Listen to the new words. 2. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

a baker, a butcher, a grocer, a greengrocer, a nurse, a salesman, a secretary, a typist

- 14 Look at the pictures and say what their jobs are.



¹ to type [taɪp] — печатать (как правило, на пишущей машинке)



LET US READ AND LEARN

- 15 Listen to the song "When I Was a Soldier...", CD 3.

WHEN I WAS A SOLDIER

When I was a soldier, a soldier, a soldier,
When I was a soldier,
This is how I went.

When I was a policeman, a policeman, a policeman,
When I was a policeman,
This is how I went.

When I was a dentist, a dentist, a dentist,
When I was a dentist,
This is how I went.

When I was a doctor, a doctor, a doctor,
When I was a doctor,
This is how I went.

When I was a barber,¹ a barber, a barber,
When I was a barber,
This is how I went.

When I was a butcher, a butcher, a butcher,
When I was a butcher,
This is how I went.

When I was a baker, a baker, a baker,
When I was a baker,
This is how I went.

¹ a barber ['bɑ:bə] — парикмахер (мужской)

When I was a grocer, a grocer, a grocer,
When I was a grocer,
This is how I went.

- 16** Listen to the dialogue, **EX 4**. Choose the correct answers to the questions after the dialogue.

- Hello, what's your name?
- Caroline.
- Sorry?
- It's Caroline.
- Can you spell it, please?
- C-a-r-o-l-i-n-e. What's your name?
- It's Natasha. That's N-a-t-a-s-h-a.
- Hello, Natasha. Do you live here?
- Yes, I do. I live at 9 Apple Street, in Flat number 3. What's your address, Caroline?
- I live at 17 Main Road. My flat is number 3, too. Are you on the phone, Natasha?
- Yes.
- What's your telephone number?
- That's 332-5448.

Questions:

1. What is Natasha's address?

a) Flat number 3, 9 Apple Street. b) Flat number 3, 19 Apple Street. c) Flat number 3, 17 Main Road.

2. What is Natasha's telephone number?

a) 332-5548 b) 332-4548 c) 332-5448

- 17** Read the dialogue (ex.¹ 16) and act it out.

- 18** Think of your own dialogue (using ex. 16 as a model) and act it out. Don't forget to change over.

¹ ex. = exercise

- 19 Read the text and draw Caroline's family tree.

A FRIENDLY FAMILY

Caroline Porter has a large family. There are nine people in it. The oldest member of her family is her granny. You can hardly believe it but she is about 90. She lives in a small cottage in the country. Caroline's granny is very interested in life. She is fond of gardening and has got a lot of beautiful and unusual flowers in her small tidy¹ garden. When Caroline's granny was young she was a greengrocer and worked in a small shop in the same street.

5. Caroline's mother and father are architects. They are about 50 but look much younger. They are fond of ancient² Russian churches and they often travel to Russia. They visit big cities and small towns. They are real specialists and know a lot. They often tell their family about their journeys. Caroline's mother is called Debbie. She is a tall woman, slim³ and fair-haired,⁴ very clever and nice. Her husband's name is Peter. Peter is shorter than his wife. He is thin and dark-haired. He is very brave. They have been married for 25 years and are real friends.



Alice

Debbie has a brother, Victor, and a sister, Alice, who is a nurse in a hospital. Alice is not married and has no children. Victor is a salesman. He is married and has two children — Bob and Polly. They are at primary school. Caroline's cousins are very bright. They



Victor

¹ tidy ['taɪdɪ] — опрятный, аккуратный

² ancient ['eɪnʃənt] — древний

³ slim [slɪm] — тонкий, стройный

⁴ fair-haired [fɛə'hɛəd] — светловолосый

are not short but they are not tall either. They are both seven, fair-haired, pretty and polite. Their parents are proud of them. But sometimes the children are lazy.¹

Caroline's cousins like to play active games. They are never tired and are seldom quiet. They have got a very rich imagination. They like to read a lot and listen to their granny's stories. Victor's wife, Mary, is a typist. She works in a big firm.

All the members of the family are very friendly and hospitable. Their friends often come to see them and they all have wonderful parties.

20 Listen to the second paragraph of the text, ex. 5, and get ready for test reading.

21 Name the jobs of all the members of the family.

22 Find in the text and read aloud the sentences to describe: a) Caroline's mother; b) Caroline's father; c) Caroline's cousins.

LET US TALK

23 Describe Caroline's aunt and uncle. The pictures of ex. 19 and the words below can help you.

Slim, short, ugly, tall, dark-haired, fair-haired, long hair, lovely, round face, long nose, red lips, long arms, white teeth.

24 Choose any famous person you have read about (or about whom you know much) and describe him/her. Ex. 19 and ex. 22 can help you.

25 Describe any family you like very much. (You can use your imagination.)

¹ lazy ['leɪzi] — ленивый

- 26** Write down the names of all the jobs you can remember.
- 27** What questions do people usually ask when they want to know about somebody's: a) name, b) date of birth, c) place of birth, d) age, e) home town, f) occupation, g) family, h) address, i) telephone number?
- 28** Your friend lives in Manchester, which is a big city in Great Britain. His house is No¹ 2 in the High Street. Your friend's surname is Barlow. His name is Patrick. Write his address in English.
- 29** Describe your classmate for the other pupils to guess who it is.
- 30** Do ex. 6, 9, 10 in writing.
- 31** Learn to write these words.

baker, butcher, grocer, greengrocer, nurse, salesman, secretary,
typist, occupation, job, married

Listening Comprehension, 6, text "Tom's Dream"
Home Reading Lesson 1, text "A Clever Salesman"

LESSON 2

DAILY LIFE



home
(at home)



house, rooms



modern
conveniences



furniture



at school

¹ No = number

LET US REVIEW

1 Say what people usually do in the kitchen, study, dining room, living room, sitting room, hall, bedroom, bathroom.

2 Name:

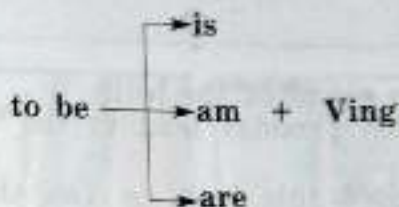
- a piece of furniture to have meals at;
- 2 pieces of furniture to lie on;
- 4 pieces of furniture to sit on;
- a piece of furniture to sit at and work;
- things you may put on the walls;
- a thing you may put on the floor;
- things you may hang on the windows;
- a piece of furniture to keep cups and glasses in;
- a piece of furniture to keep food in (especially in hot weather);
- a piece of furniture to keep books in;
- a piece of furniture to cook meals on;
- a piece of furniture to wash up in;
- a piece of furniture to keep clothes in.

3 Say what you have got and what you haven't got in your flat (house) and where this furniture is. The words can help you.

picture wardrobe sink carpet table
desk chair sofa bed cupboard
lamp mirror bookcase curtains cooker
armchair blackboard fire standard lamp

BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR

The Present Continuous Tense



now, at the moment

I **am** reading a book now.

Nick **is not** going downstairs, he **is** going upstairs.

— **Are** they leaving? — Yes, they **are**.

Where **are** they playing now?

— Who **is** laughing so loudly? — We **are**.

— Who **is** working in the study? — I **am**.

The Present Indefinite Tense

V/Vs

always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom, never

+

Summer follows spring.

That **happens** every day.

My sisters always **wear** uniform when they go to school.

We **get on** well with Ann.

We **don't wake up** at 6 in summer.
It **doesn't usually happen**.
She **doesn't usually join** us for lunch.

?

Do you **hear** the sound of the bell?
Does the corridor ['kɒrɪdɔ:] **lead** to the tower? — No, it **doesn't**.
Do they **always lock** this door? — Yes, they **do**.

wh-questions¹

When **does he leave** the house?
Where **do they usually sing**?
Why **doesn't she cook** here?
How often **do you work** in the garden?

What **goes round** the Earth? — The Moon **does**.
Who **studies geography**² in your group? — Helen **does**.
Who **leaves** for London every month? — They **do**.
Who **counts well**? — We **do**.

4 What are Peter and his friends doing at the moment and what do they do every day?

1. Peter (*read*) a magazine now and Ben and Tom (*work*) in the study.
2. Ann (*sing*) upstairs. She (*sing*) very well.
3. Mary and Susan (*not count*) at the moment. Nick (*count*) badly.
4. The door (*open*) easily. Peter (*open*) the door now.
5. Look! Sam (*leave*). He always (*leave*) at 18.10.

¹ wh-questions = wh? — специальные вопросы, обычно начинающиеся с вопросительных слов *what, when, where, why, who, which, whose* и т. д.

² В современном английском языке наблюдается тенденция писать названия учебных предметов со строчной буквы.

- 5 Look at the pictures and say what the children are doing at the moment and what they usually (seldom, always, etc.) do. The words can help you.

to sing a song, to spend a holiday, to do lessons, to leave for Moscow, to lock something with the key, to wash the floor



- 6 Make these questions "wh"-questions. Follow the model.

EXAMPLE: Is Nelly laughing? (Why)
Why is Nelly laughing?

1. Do many people learn foreign languages? (*Why*)
2. Are they counting? (*What*)
3. Does the plane leave for London? (*When*)
4. Do they write letters to their friends? (*How often*)
5. Does it become dark here late? (*When*)
6. Is he joining us? (*Who*)
7. Does it often happen? (*What*)

- 7 This is Andrew's timetable. Talk about yours and say what subjects you have and on what days.

DAY TIME	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
9.00	English	Maths	Maths	English	Maths
10.05	Nature Study	Sport	Swimming	Maths	Geography
11.10	Music	Art	English	English	English
13.00	Lunch				
13.30	History	English	Computer	Maths	Computer
14.55	Geography	Nature Study	Maths	History	Art

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

The verbs that are not usually used in the present continuous tense: like, love, want, understand, hear, see, notice,

feel, remember, recognize,¹ wish,² know, forget,
seem,³ believe, hate.⁴

I hear someone calling me.
Do you **understand** me now?
Are you sure he **knows** where to go?
What do you **feel**?
I don't **want** any porridge at the moment.

8 Make the right choice: *present indefinite* or *present continuous*.

1. How you (*feel*)?
2. You (*know*) what he (*read*)?
3. I (*not understand*) what she (*say*).
4. He (*not see*) what the problem (*be*).
5. He (*sleep*) now. He (*like*) to sleep after dinner.
6. She (*say*) she (*hear*) nothing.
7. You (*see*) the man who (*stand*) near the window? He (*want*) to speak to you.

9 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

electricity [ɪˈlekˌtrɪsɪti]

gas [ɡæs]

cold and hot running water

a washing machine ['wɒʃɪŋ məˌʃiːn] — a machine for washing clothes and other things

a vacuum cleaner ['vækjuəm ˌkliːnə] — a machine we use to clean carpets, furniture and floors

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

modern conveniences

to turn on (off)

central heating

to be on (off)

¹ to recognize [ˈrekəɡnaɪz] — узнавать

² to wish [wɪʃ] — желать

³ to seem [siːm] — казаться

⁴ to hate [heɪt] — ненавидеть

- c) Read the word combinations and sentences to know how to use these words.

It is important to have all **modern conveniences** in your flat. There were no modern conveniences in the house where I lived last summer. Does your granny have any modern conveniences in her house in the country?

The usual modern conveniences are: **central heating, electricity, gas, hot and cold running water.**

My younger sister likes to **turn the light on and off.**

His elder brother always cleans carpets with the **vacuum cleaner.**

Is your washing machine on? Central heating is usually off in summer. The vacuum cleaner I wanted to buy was very expensive. Electricity lights our houses. The water is running. Turn it off! Turn on the vacuum cleaner, please. I'd like to clean the furniture. Is the fridge on? If not, turn it on, please!

- 10 Listen to the new words,  7. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

electricity, gas, cold and hot running water, a washing machine, a vacuum cleaner, modern conveniences, central heating, to turn on, to turn off, to be on, to be off

- 11 Make the sentences complete using *on* or *off*.

1. It is dark in the room. Turn the light
2. It is cold in the room. The central heating is not
3. It is very hot here, turn the electric fire
4. In summer the central heating is usually ... in our houses.
5. My little brother can't turn ... the light. He is very small.
6. Early in the morning, when it is not dark outside we turn the light
7. Mike is doing his lessons. Turn the television ..., please.

- 12 Look at the pictures and say where there are modern conveniences and where there are not.



A MODERN FLAT



THE KING'S PALACE



AN INDIAN SETTLEMENT



MR PORTER'S COTTAGE



LET US READ AND LEARN

- 13 Listen to the dialogue, [2] 8. Read it and act it out.

Pete: Hi, Constance! Glad to meet you! How are you?

Constance: Fine, thanks. And you?

Pete: OK. You know, Constance, we have recently¹ moved into a new flat.

Constance: Have you? What's your address now?

Pete: It's Flat number 7, 33 Kings Road. Our flat is large and comfortable, with all modern conveniences: gas, electricity, hot and cold running water. We've got central heating too.

Constance: I'm glad to hear that.

- 14 Think of your own dialogue according to the model of ex. 13. Choose a partner and act it out.

- 15 Listen to the song "Old Horace" [ˈhɒrəs], [2] 9.

OLD HORACE

Old Horace lives with me,
When he comes home at three,
He knocks at the door,
He rolls² on the floor
And comes to sit with me.
He watches my TV,
He sits right on my knee,³
He takes a nap⁴
Upon my lap.⁵
That's where he likes to be.

Chorus: Ba, ba, ba, ba, ba, ba.

¹ recently [ˈriːntli] — недавно

² roll [rɒl] — кататься

³ knee [ni:] — колено

⁴ take a nap [næp] — вздремнуть

⁵ lap [læp] — колено

Old Horace drinks a lot;
He drinks right from the pot;¹
His favourite drink
Is milk, I think;
He likes it when it's hot.
He eats food from a can,²
He likes it just one way;
It doesn't last;³
He finishes fast,
He eats it every day.

Chorus.

He always catches birds,
He doesn't say a word.
He looks at one
And starts to run.
He catches it for fun.
Old Horace isn't short,
Old Horace isn't fat,⁴
He's very sweet,
He has four feet.
Old Horace is my cat!

Chorus.

LET US READ

- 16 Read the story and say why Peter was sure he was going to have a nice holiday.

PETER'S HOLIDAY

Mr and Mrs Gray lived in a big city. Mr Gray worked in a bank and spent a lot of time at work. Mrs Gray was fond of music and art. The Grays had a son whose name was Peter.

¹ pot [pɒt] — горшок, котелок

² can [kæn] — консервная банка

³ last [lɑːst] — длиться

⁴ fat [fæt] — толстый, жирный

Peter was good at all the subjects at school but didn't like to wash. He hated water.

Mr and Mrs Gray wanted to spend the summer in the country. They found a nice small house not very far from Mr Gray's office. Mrs Gray and Peter went there one weekend at the beginning of June. Later Mr Gray wanted to join them. Peter and his mother went there for two weeks. It was late in the evening when they arrived at the house. Mrs Gray said to Peter, "We're going to stay here for fourteen days."



The boy ran into the house, turned on the light and looked into all the rooms. He saw a nice kitchen with a white fridge, two cupboards, a cooker and a sink. There was gas and electricity in the house. Peter also saw a vacuum cleaner in the corner. The sitting room with a tall mirror and a wonderful fireplace was fantastic. You could play football there.

Peter ran back to his mother and shouted: "Mummy! It's great! But I haven't found a bathroom. Where is it?" "It's very difficult to get water here," his mother answered, "and there is no hot and cold running water here." "That's very good, Mum," Peter said. "That is going to be a very nice holiday indeed!"

17 Read out what modern conveniences they had in their summer cottage.

LET US TALK

- 18 Look through the story (ex. 16) and say what you think of Peter.
- 19 Give a short summary of the text (ex. 16).
- 20 Say what modern conveniences you have got in your flat (house).
- 21 You are sure to have a relative or a friend who lives in the country. Describe the place he lives in (room, furniture, modern conveniences).
- 22 Say a few words about: a) your mother's usual working day; b) your school day.

LET US WRITE

- 23 Do ex. 6 and 8 in writing.
- 24 Make the sentences complete.
1. I fly (*usually*) to London. 2. She turns on central heating in summer (*never*). 3. We are late (*often*). 4. Mr Mole reads his newspaper (*every morning*). 5. She is angry (*seldom*). 6. My brother helps his mother clean the carpet with the vacuum cleaner (*always*).
- 25 What is your choice to express the same ideas in English.
1) Нелли — медсестра. Она работает в больнице. 2) Твой брат сейчас работает в саду? — Да. Он поливает цветы. 3) Секретарь господина Грина посылает письма в Лондон каждую неделю. 4) Они не часто смотрят телевизор. 5) Что он читает? — Он читает газету. Он всегда читает ее утром. 6) Мэри чистит ковер пылесосом. Она всегда это делает по понедельникам.
- 26 Do ex. 11 in writing.

27 Learn to write these words:

electricity, gas, cold and hot running water, washing machine, vacuum cleaner, central heating, modern conveniences, to turn on (off), to be on (off)

Listening Comprehension, pp 10, text "It Is Important to Know a Foreign Language"

Home Reading Lesson 2, text "Whose Favourite Rooms Are They?"

LESSON 3

FREE TIME



hobbies
and interests



radio and TV



museums,
exhibitions



sports



cinema, theatre,
concert

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Play a memory game. Look at the list of hobbies for a moment, then close the book and name all you can remember.

sports
singing
dancing
cooking
travelling
fishing
gardening

writing novels
taking pictures
watching TV
listening to music
reading fiction
going to the theatre
collecting stamps

Read the names of the hobbies. Use your imagination and say whose hobbies they can be.

EXAMPLE: Mr Porter's hobby is performing on the stage.

watching → cartoons
→ feature films
→ documentaries
→ soap operas
→ television
→ plays

listening to → the news
→ music
→ operas
→ modern music
→ songs

collecting → stamps
→ coins
→ badges
→ books
→ pictures

reading → fiction
→ novels
→ magazines
→ newspapers
→ stories

writing → detective stories
→ novels
→ spy stories
→ fiction
→ poems

going → to the theatre
→ to the cinema
→ to the museum
→ to the swimming pool

taking pictures

performing on the stage

- 3 Say what your friends' or relatives' hobbies are.

EXAMPLE: My elder brother's hobby is taking photos.

- 4 Say what your favourite hobby is. What were your hobbies when you were a small boy/girl?

BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR

The Past Indefinite Tense

Ved/V₂

yesterday, last year, last week, last Monday, last night,
a week ago, a month ago, a year ago, the day before
yesterday, the other day,¹ in 1990

+

He **explained** it to me last week.
We **collected** a lot of stamps last year.
They **went** to the theatre the other day.
You **wrote** a long poem yesterday.

-

I **didn't** watch TV the day before yesterday.
She **didn't** go to the library three days ago.
You **didn't** buy any tickets last night.
We **didn't** visit France in 1993.

¹ the other day — на днях

?

- Did you read your favourite book yesterday? — Yes, I did.
- Did he perform on the stage last night? — No, he didn't.
- Did they go to the museum last Thursday? — Yes, they did.
- Did she understand the play? — No, she didn't.

wh?

- When did you go to the theatre last? — I went there five days ago.
- Where did you meet this famous writer? — We met him in the library.
- Why did he watch the film? — Because he liked it.
- How many times did she visit the art gallery last month? — She did it twice.
- Who played Hamlet in the famous Russian film? — Smoktunovsky did.
- Who read the newspaper a minute ago? — I did.
- Who could answer the question? — Nobody could.

- 5 Imagine that all those actions happened in the past and tell your friends about them. Make all the necessary changes.

EXAMPLE: Nick is looking through the magazine now.
Nick looked through the magazine the other day.

1. The Russian Army is winning the battle.
2. They sell newspapers only in the street.
3. The boy will appear very soon.
4. He always tells the truth.
5. The sun is rising and everything is getting so bright.
6. He gets up at five and catches the 6.30 bus.

LET US LEARN

- 6 Look at the portraits ['pɔ:trɪts] of the famous English and American writers and say what you can about them.



Mark Twain ['mɑ:k 'tweɪn] (1835-1910)
lived in the state of Missouri [mɪ'zʊəri]
on the banks of the Mississippi
[mɪ'sɪsɪpi]
wrote about Tom Sawyer ['sɔ:ʒə]
began to work at the age of 12
was a sailor
became famous in 1865
was a short story writer and the
greatest American humorist ['hju:mərɪst]
was fond of collecting things which
nobody had

James Hadly Chase [ˈdʒeɪmz 'hædli tʃeɪz]
(1906-1985) ʔ ʔ ʔ ʔ ʔ
was born in London
began to write in 1939
became famous in 1939
worked as a bookseller
wrote 78 books



Agatha Christie ['æɡəθə 'krɪsti] (1890-1976)
didn't go to school
got her education [edju'keɪʃn] at home
took part in the war of 1914
got married in 1914
began to write detective stories in 1920
became famous in 1926
wrote 68 novels, 17 plays, more than a
hundred stories

William Shakespeare [wɪljəm ʃeɪkspiə] (1564-1616) *Уильям Шекспир*
 lived in Stratford-on-Avon
 went to a grammar school
 worked as an actor
 acted at the London theatre called
 "The Globe" [gləʊb]
 wrote about 37 plays and many poems
 wrote in the golden age of English literature [ɪntrəʒə]



Jack London [dʒæk ˈlɒndən] (1876-1916)
 was a son of a farmer
 had a lot of jobs
 worked as a newspaper seller, a sailor,
 a factory¹ worker
 dreamed of becoming a pirate [ˈpaɪrɪt]
 wrote his first book in 1898
 wrote novels and stories about animals
 lived in Alaska for some years
 wrote 152 stories about the North

7 Answer the questions (see ex. 6).

1. When was William Shakespeare born?
2. What was James Chase's native city?
3. Where was Mark Twain from?
4. When did Agatha Christie become famous? What about James Chase and Mark Twain?
5. Which of them was an actor? a sailor? a seller?
6. How many novels did Agatha Christie write?
7. Which of them dreamed of becoming a pirate?
8. Which of them was the greatest American humorist? the greatest English writer?

¹ factory [ˈfæktəri] — фабрика, завод

9. Which of them wrote in the golden age of English literature?
10. Which of them took part in the war of 1914?
11. How did Agatha Christie get her education?

8 Here are the answers. Ask questions about the famous writers. (See ex. 6, 7.)

William Shakespeare

- 1) He lived in Stratford-on-Avon.
- 2) He acted in "The Globe".
- 3) He wrote in the golden age of English literature.

Agatha Christie

- 1) In 1890.
- 2) She got married in 1914.
- 3) She wrote more than a hundred stories.

Jack London

- 1) His father was a farmer.
- 2) He had a lot of jobs.
- 3) He wrote stories about animals.

9 Do you know any books by these writers? Name them. If you can't, go to the library or look through your home collection of books and be ready to give the titles ['taɪtəl]. If you can, say a few words about any of these books.

10 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

piano ['piænəʊ]

gallery ['gæləri]

sculpture ['skʌlptʃə]

biography [baɪ'ɒgrəfi]

show [ʃəʊ]

guitar [ɡɪ'tɑː]

radio ['reɪdɪəʊ]

classical ['klæsɪkl]

revue [rɪ'vjuː]

video ['vɪdɪəʊ]

drama ['drɑːmə]

politics ['pɒlɪtɪks]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

flute, violin, paint, painting, exhibition, to go in for (sports), folk.

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

His nephew is fond of playing the guitar and the piano but he dislikes playing the violin and the flute. By the way, he likes to paint very much.

My elder brother is a theatre-goer. He is fond of watching comedies, ballet and drama performances and video films.

Would you like to go to a pop music concert or to a concert of classical music?

How often do you visit exhibitions, picture galleries and art museums? When does the Tretyakov Gallery open? Do you know when it closes? It opens at 10 and closes at 7.

Where could I find Agatha Christie's biography? Who has written the biography of this famous actress?

We could see beautiful sculptures and wonderful paintings in the Museum of Fine Arts. — Can we find any portrait paintings in the National Gallery in London? — Certainly you can.

My grandfather's hobbies are politics, listening to the radio and watching ice revues. My uncle always discusses politics and watches different TV programmes.

What are they showing on TV tonight? Oh, there are a lot of interesting programmes: folk and classical music, an ice revue and the quiz of the day.

What sports do your friends go in for? Richard goes in for swimming and running and Michael goes in for skiing and skating.

- 11 Listen to the new words, 11. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

a piano, a guitar, a gallery, a sculpture, a biography, a show, politics, radio, classical, revue, video, a flute, a violin, to paint, a painting, an exhibition, to go in for sports, folk

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

to play **the** piano
to play **the** guitar
to play **the** violin
to play **the** flute

but:

to play football
to play tennis
to play hockey
to play chess

to go in for sports
to go in for running
to go in for skiing
to go in for skating
to go in for swimming

- 12** Say what games the children played at the sports ground three days ago and what musical instruments some of them played after classes.

EXAMPLE: Mary and Pete (*basketball*).

Mary and Pete played basketball at the sports ground three days ago.

1. The children (*volleyball*).
2. Mary (*piano*).
3. Nelly and Victor (*badminton*).
4. My elder sister (*guitar*).
5. Caroline (*violin*).
6. The boys (*hockey*).

- 13** Say what kinds of sports your friends or your relatives go in for.

EXAMPLE: My younger brother goes in for jumping.

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 14** Listen to the dialogue, [12]. Read it and act it out.

Tom: Where shall we go tonight?

Kate: As you know, Tom, I'm a cinema-goer. I would like to go to the cinema. What's on at the "Odeon" ['əudjən]?

Tom: "Hamlet" is on.

Kate: Who is playing Hamlet?

Tom: I don't know. It's an old film. I think it's black-and-white.

Kate: Oh, no. Let's go to some exhibition instead. I know they are showing an interesting collection of sculptures in the National Gallery.

Tom: Isn't it too late? When does it close?

Kate: It closes at 5. We'll be there just in time. Hurry up!

- 15 Think of your own dialogue (use ex. 14 as a model). Choose a partner and act it out. Don't forget to change over.

- 16 Listen to the song "The Circus¹ Clown", ex. 13.

THE CIRCUS CLOWN

He arrived in the spring;
He smiled at everyone;
He played with all the children;
They danced in the sun.

He whispered² in their ears;
They laughed at his games;
They loved to hear his stories;
He learned all their names.

Chorus:

They cried yesterday;
He travelled to another town;
They called him, but he walked away...
He was the circus clown.

He dressed in funny clothes;
His favourite shirt was red;
He did his hair and put his hat
On top of his round head.

¹ circus ['sɜ:kəs] — цирк; цирковой

² whisper ['wɪspə] — шептать

The children liked his shoes;
They touched his giant [dʒaɪənt] feet;
They followed him, applauded [ə'plɔ:dɪd] him,
And marched in the street.

Chorus.

They visited his tent;
They waited every day;
They repeated everything he did;
They wanted him to play.

LET US READ

- 17 Read the text and say if Uncle Oscar was happy.

WHATEVER HAPPENED TO UNCLE OSCAR?

(after George P. Mc Callum)

Part I

I would like to tell you what happened to my Uncle Oscar, or I would rather try to understand it and explain it to you.

My Uncle Oscar was a very nice man. Every morning on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday he usually took the seven forty-five (7.45) bus and started for work. He went to the bank early in the morning as he was an accountant¹ (and by the way, a very good one). He worked hard all day long and returned home rather late. My uncle was forty-seven years old, married and had two children.

14. His wife's name was Agatha. Aunt Agatha was fond of talking and always talked too much and in a very loud voice. That's why I think Uncle Oscar seldom had much to say. Their two children, Elizabeth and Julian, were not very pleasant. Both of them were large and loud like their mother. And they were selfish² and greedy³ too. They didn't think about their father

¹ accountant [ə'kauntənt] — бухгалтер

² selfish ['selfɪʃ] — эгоистичный

³ greedy ['ɡri:di] — жадный



much. He was a little quiet man, who spoke little and went about unnoticed.¹ He liked music but didn't play the piano, the violin, the flute or any other musical instrument. He practically never went to the theatre or to the cinema and he didn't visit exhibitions or museums either. ☐

Uncle Oscar didn't go in for sports. He was not fond of swimming, skiing or playing golf. You could never see him in the sitting room in front of the television watching sports programmes. Uncle Oscar never complained² about his boring life. I knew he had a hobby. He had a very good collection of stamps and was happy only when he worked on his stamp collection. He was a real collector. His children took no interest in their father's hobby. But I, his nephew, did. Uncle Oscar showed me some stamps and explained that they were really very expensive.

Then on the 14th of October 1951 Uncle Oscar got up as usual at 6.45 (six forty-five), made his own breakfast (Aunt Agatha, Elizabeth and Julian were still in bed; they never got up before 8), left the house and went to the bus stop. Some people who were at the bus stop that day didn't see him at all. The others were not so sure. They couldn't say anything definite. But that was the kind of person Uncle Oscar was. Other people seldom noticed him. One thing was certain: he never got to the bank that morning.

¹ unnoticed [ʌn'nəʊtɪst] — незаметный

² complained [kəm'pleɪnd] — жаловался

18 Answer the following questions.

1. Who is the narrator¹ of the story?
2. How many members were there in Uncle Oscar's family?
3. How old was Uncle Oscar?
4. What was his job?
5. Who talked a lot in his family? Who was always quiet?
6. Do you think Uncle Oscar's children loved their father? Why?
7. What was Uncle Oscar's hobby?
8. Why was Uncle Oscar's life boring?
9. Uncle Oscar didn't go in for sports, did he?
10. Where did Uncle Oscar go on the 14th of October? Did he get there?

LET US TALK

19 Say what you think of:

- a) Uncle Oscar;
- b) his wife;
- c) his children;
- d) the kind of life Uncle Oscar led.

20 Tell your classmates what happened to Uncle Oscar on the 14th of October.

21 What do you think the end of the story is? Tell it to your classmates.

22 Do you want to know what the real end of the story by George P. McCallum is? Then read Lesson 3 in your "English Reader V".

23 Uncle Oscar's hobby was collecting stamps. What about other people's hobbies? Say whose hobbies they are and describe them in the most detailed way.

- a) visiting museums, exhibitions, galleries;
- b) playing the piano (the violin, the guitar);

¹ narrator [nə'reɪtə] — рассказчик

- c) going in for sports;
- d) painting;
- e) listening to the radio, watching TV;
- f) watching video films;
- g) visiting jazz concerts.

24 Choose a partner and ask him questions about any famous person you like.

25 Speak about your last visit to a museum (picture gallery, exhibition, etc.). The following plan can help you.

- 1) where you went;
- 2) when it was;
- 3) why you chose it;
- 4) who you went there with;
- 5) what you saw there;
- 6) when you arrived there;
- 7) how you arrived there;
- 8) what were the opening hours;
- 9) how interesting it was;
- 10) when you returned home;
- 11) when you are going there again.

26 Ask your friend about his/her last visit to the cinema (concert, theatre, circus, etc.).

27 Answer the following questions and get ready to speak about sports in your life.

- 1. Do you like sports?
- 2. What are your favourite sports and games?
- 3. When did you begin going in for sports?
- 4. What sport was it?
- 5. Do you like to play games in the ground or do you just like sports programmes on television?
- 6. How good are you at sports?

LET US WRITE

28 Answer the following questions.

- EXAMPLE:**
1. Who often goes to the museum?
— My little cousins do.
 2. Who went to the ballet the other day?
— Our family did.
1. Who goes in for sports in your group?
 2. Who likes to go to different exhibitions?
 3. Who is listening to the opera now?
 4. Who is interested in politics?
 5. Who will go to the concert next week?
 6. Who can play the guitar?
 7. Who must learn this poem by heart?
 8. What museum has got a good collection of sculptures?

29 Do ex. 25 in writing.

30 Write questions for more information.

He visited it.

31 Learn to write these words.

flute, violin, piano, guitar, exhibition, paint, painting, folk, circus, sculpture, to go in for sports

Listening Comprehension, 15, text "The British Museum"

Home Reading Lesson 3, text "Whatever Happened to Uncle Oscar?", part II

LESSON 4

TRAVELLING



weather,
seasons,
nature



¹ arrival, ² departure,
luggage



transport



moving about
the city



hotels

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Look at the picture, say how people can travel and answer the following questions.



¹ arrival [ə'raɪvl] — приезд, прибытие

² departure [dɪ'pɑ:tʃə] — отъезд, отправление

1. Which is the quickest way of travelling?
2. Which is the most comfortable?
3. Which is the cheapest and which is the most expensive?
4. Which way of travelling is the most convenient?
5. Which one is the most interesting?

- 2 Imagine that you are talking to Mr Smith who travelled to India by plane last year. Ask him questions about his journey. The words can help you.

a business trip, a tourist trip, to arrive at the airport, much/little luggage, to buy a single (return) ticket, business/tourist class, cheap, expensive, to catch a flight, on the plane, How much time did it take you to ...?

- 3 Here are Alice's answers. Pretend you are John, think of his questions to her and write them down.

John: *Is your trip was good?*

Alice: It was fantastic!

John: *do you see the sea*

Alice: Yes, we did. We spent some days at the seaside and then we went to the mountains.

John:

Alice: By train. It was a through train, so we didn't change.

John: *Is it was a fast train?*

Alice: Yes, it was a fast train. We got to our hotel very quickly.

John: *How long you stay there*

Alice: We stayed there for 4 days.

John: *Is the train for*

Alice: No, it was a single.

John:

Alice: It was wonderful, sometimes a bit windy and cold, but usually very pleasant and sunny.

- 4 Act out the dialogue of ex. 3. Don't forget to change over.

- 5 Complete the text filling in the words and word combinations.

a single, by sea, weather, ticket, on board the ship, wind, tourist class, by plane, expensive, trip, voyage

Last summer Mike's elder brother had a very interesting He went to New York He travelled The ... was fantastic. The sky was blue. There was no All the passengers enjoyed the voyage.

My ... was not very ... as it was I had ... as I wanted to get back to London

- 6 Use the text of ex. 5 as a model and tell the class a few words about somebody's journey.

BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR

The Present Perfect Tense

have/has + Ved/V₃

already, just, yet, never, ever, lately,¹ recently, this morning, this evening, this week, this month, this year, today
since, for

+

I have bought a return ticket for Paris.
She has just flown to New York.
They have missed their flight this morning.
I have known Mrs Ford since 1994.
He has already been to London for three days.

—

I haven't got my luggage yet.
We haven't arrived at the railway station.

¹ lately ['leɪtli] — недавно, за последнее время (за последние дни, недели)

He has never been to America.
I haven't heard from him for a long time.
We haven't seen her for ages.

?

Have you ever stayed at the hotel?
Has he found his luggage yet?
Have they explained everything to you yet?
How long have you been here?
What cities have you visited yet?
Who has been to Moscow recently? — I have.

7 Fill in the missing forms of the verbs.

think	...	...
...	drank	...
sit	...	...
...	...	lost
have	...	...
...	heard	...
...	slept	...
...	found	found
say	...	...
...	...	flown
...	read	...
...	gave	...
tell	...	...
...	...	taken
...	understood	...
come	...	...
...	got	...
wear	...	...
...	...	forgotten

8 Make the sentences complete filling in: just, yet, already, never, ever, recently, lately.

1. He has ... been to Canada.

2. Have you had a holiday ...?
3. Have they ... eaten at the new café?
4. I haven't heard from my cousin ...
5. Have you seen any good performances ...?
6. Have they called you ...? No, they haven't called me
7. He has ... been to the Tretyakov Gallery.

9 Ask questions using:

to play tennis recently; to get an excellent mark lately;
to buy a new textbook lately; to hear from the grandpar-
ents recently; to travel recently; to work hard lately.

10 Look at the list of things to do and say what Susan has already done and what she hasn't done yet.

THINGS TO DO!

1. Buy the ticket to Boston.
2. Take the books to the library.
3. Make lunch.
4. Write a letter to Granny.
5. Give a call to Betty.
6. Send a telegramme to Daddy.
7. Swim in the pool.
8. Read the novel up to the end.
9. Drink the milk.

11 Read the beginning of the sentences in A and find the correct ending in B.

A

- 1) Tom is happy because
- 2) Becky is proud because
- 3) Nelly is interested because
- 4) Fred is in bed because
- 5) Mary's dress is clean because

B

- a) he hasn't won the prize.
- b) he has flown to Paris with his Dad.
- c) he has fallen ill.
- d) he has fallen over on the ground.
- e) she has been to many countries.

- 6) Paul's shirt is dirty because
 7) Richard is sad because
 f) she hasn't read the story up to the end.
 g) she has washed it.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

I **have always** wanted to come here.
 I **have always** lived in this street.
 They **have always** had that address.
 We **have always** known them.
 She **has always** been interested in cartoons.
 He **has always** spoken good English.

12 Look, read and compare.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I always visit my granny on Saturday. | 1. I have always had this book. |
| 2. He always flies to Riga. | 2. He has always wanted to visit Riga. |
| 3. She always speaks English in class. | 3. She has always spoken fantastic English. |
| 4. They always travel with a lot of luggage. | 4. They have always been proud of their Motherland. |
| 5. We always travel second class. | 5. We have always travelled by train. |

13 What is your choice to express the same ideas in English?

1) Они всегда жили в этом городе. 2) Они всегда покупают обратные билеты. 3) Он всегда фотографирует, когда путешествует. 4) Она всегда знала этого фотографа. 5) Мы всегда хотели побывать в Париже. 6) Моя приятельница всегда жила в Париже. 7) У меня всегда был альбом с марками. 8) Я всегда собирал марки. 9) Вы всегда берете с собой мало багажа. 10) Я всегда гордилась своими родителями.

14 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

a fast train ['fɑ:st 'treɪn], information [ˌɪnfə'meɪʃn], camera ['kæməɾə], a slow train ['sləʊ 'treɪn], traveller ['trævlə], passport control ['pɑ:spɔ:t kən'trəʊl]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

arrival, departure, check-in, to check in, fare, customs, customs officer, booking office, to book

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

I always travel by **fast trains**, but my granny is fond of **slow trains**. Can you tell me where the **information** office is? — You can get the information about the bus timetable here. Is this your **camera**? Are you fond of taking pictures? A **traveller** is one who travels. When you leave London for Moscow you must go through the **passport control**. The reporters waited for the **arrival** of the President. We hope for the arrival of better news. What do you know about his **departure**? I **checked** my luggage **in** in London. Where shall we check in? When you arrive in a country you should go through the **Customs**. It took us an hour to get our luggage through the Customs. The **customs officers** at the airport were very polite. You can buy tickets for concerts, shows and other performances in the **booking office** at the theatre; you buy tickets to go by train in the booking office at the railway station. Father **booked** a single room and a double at the hotel before we left on our trip. What's the fare from London to Paris? *Conductor*:¹ Fares, please!

15 Listen to the new words. 16. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

a fast train, a slow train, information, a traveller, a camera, passport control, an arrival, a departure, check-in, to check in, the customs, a customs officer, a booking office, to book, fare

¹ a conductor [kən'dʌktɔ:] — кондуктор

- 16 Look at pictures 1—7. What is happening in each of them? Where is the action taking place?





5



6



7

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

sun — sunny
wind — windy
cloud — cloudy

rain — rainy
snow — snowy
fog — foggy

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 17 Listen to the dialogue, ☐ 17 and say for how long Mrs Brown is going to stay, what kind of room she wants and why she is interested in the car park.
- 18 Listen to the dialogue, ☐ 17, and read it aloud after the speaker.



Mrs Brown: Excuse me, I'm looking for a hotel to stay at.¹ What would you recommend?

Information Clerk: How long are you going to stay?

Mrs Brown: Two or three nights, I think. Could you, please, look for some hotel near the centre?

Information Clerk: Yes, Madam, naturally. Is it a single room you want?

Mrs Brown: No, a double room, please. My husband is joining me.

Information Clerk: Would you like to have your own bathroom?

Mrs Brown: Yes, of course.

Information Clerk: Right. Now can I offer you New Barbican, Madam? It is a modern hotel, comfortably furnished.² All rooms have radio, telephone and a colour TV set.

Mrs Brown: Thank you, but I'm touring³ here. Is the hotel

¹ to stay at (in) a hotel — остановиться в гостинице

² comfortably furnished [tɜːnɪʃl] — уютно обставленный

³ to tour [tuə] — совершать путешествие, поездку, турне



far from the main sights¹ of the city? Where exactly² is it?

Information Clerk: In Central Street, Madam. It is not far from the Tower of London and Tower Bridge. You can easily walk to St. Paul's from it. It will take you 20 minutes to get to the heart of the City of London.

Mrs Brown: How much does it cost?

Information Clerk: It is 40 pounds per person per night.³

Mrs Brown: Fine, fine, that will do... Oh, yes, one more thing. Is there a car park? My husband is bringing his car.

Information Clerk: Yes, the hotel has its own car park.

- 19 Listen to the song "Rules and Regulations".⁴ ☑ 18.

RULES AND REGULATIONS

Don't move, don't talk.
Never run, always walk.
Give way, wait a minute,
Going to be trouble,⁵ you're in it.

NO DOGS

¹ the sights [saɪts] — достопримечательности

² exactly [ɪɡ'zæktli] — точно

³ 40 pounds per person per night — 40 фунтов с человека за ночь

⁴ regulations [ˌregjʊ'leɪʃnz] — инструкции

⁵ trouble ['trʌbl] — беспокойство



No smoking Chorus:

No waiting, no parking,
Don't smile, stop laughing.
Turn it on, turn it off,
Open your mouth, try to cough.¹



Rules and regulations...
Laws² and obligations³...
You must do this, you can't do that.
Rules and regulations.

Keep
off
the grass

Parking meters, railway stations,
Seaports, airports.
You mustn't steal — don't get caught.
Laws and obligations.



No radios

No smoking,⁴ no drinking,
No running, stop thinking.
Work all day, play all night,
Do what I say — that's right.

Silence

No cameras

Turn left, turn right,
Always love, never fight.
Come early, don't be late,
Try to be good, don't hate.

SLOW

Chorus.

LET US READ

20 Read the story and say why Mr Kirk has bought his new friend a hat.

MY FRIEND IS AN ALIEN⁵

(after Peter and Karen Viney)

Mr Kirk was in the park with his dog one Sunday night. Suddenly he heard a noise and saw a strange person in front

¹ cough [kɒʃ] — кашлять

² law [lɔː] — закон

³ obligation [ɒblɪˈɡeɪʃn] — обязательство

⁴ smoke [sməʊk] — курить

⁵ alien ['eɪliən] — чужестранец, иностранец, инопланетянин

of him. It was Zardak, from the planet Vecon [vɪkən]. Zardak came to London by air. But he didn't arrive at the airport, he didn't check in, he didn't pass the passport control or the customs.

Mr Kirk took him home, but he didn't tell anybody about Zardak's arrival. Zardak liked Mr Kirk, and they became friends. But Zardak was tired of Mr Kirk's flat. He wanted to travel about Mr Kirk's country or at least he wanted to make a tour of the city.

☐ 19. Zardak: Well, my good friend. When can we go out and see your city?

Mr Kirk: Er... that's difficult, Zardak. It isn't a very good idea.

Zardak: But I've been here for two days and I haven't seen anything yet.

Mr Kirk: You've watched television.

Zardak: I can watch television from my starship or when I am at home on planet Vecon. Please, my friend.

Mr Kirk: I've already told you. It isn't a good idea. ☐

But Zardak wants to go on a tour of London. He is fond of travelling. He has travelled a lot. Travelling is his hobby. Just because of his hobby he has come to the planet Earth.

Zardak has got little silver horns¹ on his head. With the help of these horns he can make people do² what he likes. His horns become bright green and the light coming from them makes everybody say and do what Zardak wants. So Zardak just looks at Mr Kirk. Mr Kirk sees the green light and says:

Mr Kirk: Oh, I agree. Let's go to the city centre. Really why don't we go out? I have bought you a coat and a hat. Please put them on.

Zardak: But why a hat? You never wear a hat.

Mr Kirk: All right. I'll wear one too.

Mr Kirk and Zardak go along the street to the bus stop. At the traffic lights they meet Mrs Evans, an old neighbour of Mr Kirk.



¹ horn [hɔ:n] — рог

² he can make people do — он может заставить людей делать

Mrs Evans: Hello, Mr Kirk. I'm so glad to meet you. Who is this young man?

Mr Kirk: He's my cousin from California [ˌkælɪfɔːniə]. His name is Zardak.

Mrs Evans: Oh! How do you do? How long have you been here?

Mr Kirk: He has been here since Thursday. He has been here for two days.

Mrs Evans: What do you think of England, Zardak? Is it your first visit to the country?

Zardak: Yes, it is. I have never been here before. It's very nice.

Mrs Evans: And I like your country very much. I've been there three times, you know. My sister lives in Los Angeles [ləs ˈændʒələz] in California. She has always wanted to live there. And where exactly do you live?

Zardak: Vecon.

Mrs Evans: I've never heard of that. Where...

Mr Kirk: It's a very small town. Very small.

Mrs Evans: Funny, you haven't got an American accent ['æksənt].

Mr Kirk (looking at his watch¹): Oh, dear! Is that the time?

Well, goodbye, Mrs Evans. We are really in a hurry.

Mrs Evans: Goodbye. Nice to meet you.

21 Agree or disagree.

1. Zardak arrived in London on Thursday.
2. Zardak lives in California.
3. Zardak has never been to the Earth. It is his first visit.
4. Mrs Evans has never heard of Vecon.
5. Vecon is a very small town in the USA.
6. Zardak hasn't got an American accent.
7. Mr Kirk and Zardak are really in a hurry.
8. Mrs Evans has been to California several times.

22 Let's discuss the text. Think and answer the questions. Use as many sentences as you can.

1. Where did Mr Kirk meet Zardak?
2. What have you learnt about Zardak from the text?

¹ watch [wɒtʃ] — часам

3. Has Zardak seen anything of London yet? Why?
4. Why do you think Mr Kirk bought Zardak a hat?
5. How could Zardak make Mr Kirk agree to walk to the city centre?
6. Who has explained to Mrs Evans what Vecon is? Why?
7. Did Mr Kirk tell Mrs Evans the truth? Why?
8. What do you think Mrs Evans wanted to ask Zardak when she said: "I have never heard of that. Where...?"
9. Why did Mr Kirk want to finish their talk? How did he do it?

- 23** Imagine that you are Mr Kirk. You want to show Zardak London. Where will you take him? What are you going to tell him about these places?

LET US TALK

- 24** Do you like travelling? Why? Let's talk about it.

1. Do you often travel? When did you travel last?
2. Where did you go?
3. How did you go there? Was it by car, by bus, by train or by plane?
4. Which is the quickest means¹ of travelling? Which is the most comfortable?
5. How do people usually travel if they want to get to the farthest places on the earth?
6. Do you think it is interesting to travel by sea? Have you ever done it? What was the weather like then?
7. How often do your parents or relatives travel by air? Where do they usually buy tickets for the flight? Is it expensive to travel by plane? Why do many people prefer this way of travelling?
8. What do people usually do when they are on the plane? on the train? on the bus?
9. Have you ever travelled by car? Is it comfortable? Is it convenient? Why do many people like travelling by car?
10. Where do people stay as they travel to faraway places? Have you ever stayed at a hotel? What was it like? What were the rooms like? What was the food like?

¹ means [mi:nz] — enoco

- 25 Look at the pictures and say what the weather is (was, has been) like in these cities.



Moscow. Now



LONDON. YESTERDAY



New York. Since Monday



*Paris.
Since the 5th of October*

LET US WRITE

- 26 Write the answers. (See ex. 20.)
1. Who was in the park one night?
 2. Who came from the planet Vecon?

3. Who took Zardak home?
4. Who hasn't seen anything of the Earth yet?
5. Who can watch television from his starship?
6. Who wants to make a tour about London?
7. Who lives in Los Angeles?
8. Who has lived there for 20 years?
9. Who is in a hurry?

- 27** You know the words *a star* and *a ship*. Do you remember them? What does the word *starship* mean? What does *city centre* mean? Follow the models and form the words. Check up the spelling in the vocabulary.

A		B	
bed	man	railway	lights
fire	port	traffic	train
sea	place	through	ticket
milk	board	return	station
black	room	single	

- 28** Make sentences about the people.

EXAMPLE: Peter is a butcher.
(sell a lot of meat)
 He has sold a lot of meat.

1. Mr Nelson is an architect.
(build some modern cottages)
2. Mr Kirk is a baker.
(become famous for his wonderful bread)
3. Nelly is fond of painting.
(draw funny pictures of animals)
4. Jack is a postman.
(bring me so many letters and magazines)
5. Angela is bad at mathematics.
(not learn how to add well)
6. Steve is so ill now.
(not feel so bad since his operation)

- 29** Describe your last trip (journey, voyage, tour). Don't forget to write a few words about the weather at the time.

30 Learn to write these words.

arrival, departure, to check in (check-in), customs, customs officer, to book, booking office, fare

Listening Comprehension, ex 20, text "Denis Cook Is Travelling"

Home Reading Lesson 4, text "A Letter from Yaroslavl"

LESSON 5

SO MANY COUNTRIES, SO MANY CUSTOMS
(RUSSIA, BRITAIN, THE USA)



history



main cities



symbols



famous people

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Put the following words into the correct category: *parts of the city/places of interest/places to work/money.*

road, factory, rouble ['rubl], exhibition, street, nickel, tower, shop, quarter, park, square, gallery, hospital, penny, airport, museum, bridge, pound, seaport, band, church, railway station, monument, dime, dollar

2 Name at least five places in Moscow, in London, in Washington or New York where you would like to take your friend.

3 We hope you remember such places of interest in London as: Trafalgar Square, the British Museum, Hyde Park. Try and answer the following questions about these places.

1. What is the centre of London?
2. Where is the National Gallery situated?
3. What do you know about the British Museum?
4. Which is the largest park in London?
5. What is there in the middle of Trafalgar Square?

4 This is the flag of Great Britain. The British people call it "the Union Jack". It is red, white and blue. Do you remember the Russian and the American national flags? Describe them and draw them in your notebooks.



5 Look at the pictures and say in what countries these buildings and places are. Which of them can you describe as symbols of: a) Russia, b) Britain, c) the USA?





- 6 Do you remember any facts about the Russian, American and British history? Then answer the following questions.

a) Russia.

1. Which is the largest country in the world?
2. Where is Russia situated?
3. What is the longest river in Russia?
4. What old Russian towns on the Volga do you know?
5. Who founded the capital of Russia? When?
6. What is the heart of Moscow?
7. What can you say about the birch tree?

b) Britain.

1. When did England become a great country?
2. When did William the Conqueror come to England from France? What do you know about him?
3. What do you know about the Tower of London? Who built the White Tower? Why?
4. When was the Great Fire of London?
5. Did the people of London build a new city after the fire?
6. What can you say about the capital of England at the end of the 20th century?

c) The USA.

1. Who discovered America?
2. What was the name of the ship that sailed from England to America?
3. Were there any women on board the "Mayflower"?
4. Who was the first president of the United States?
5. How many states are there in the United States?
6. What is the capital of the USA?

BRUSH UP YOUR GRAMMAR

The Future Indefinite Tense (Future Simple)

shall/will + V

tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next Monday, next January, next day, next week, next month, next year, in a few days

+

I'm sure Tom **will be** a good architect.
I'm twelve now. I'll **be** thirteen next year.
He says he'll always **remember** our school.

Nick has left for Kursk. He **won't be** at the party.
 I **shan't** see you next week.
 My parents **won't agree** with this idea.

?

Will you **join** us the day after tomorrow?
 Shall I **phone** you later?
 Will they **buy** the textbook?

wh?

Where **will** you **go** next summer?
 When **will** they **give** us their answer?
 Why **won't** you **send** them your plan?
 Who **will** win? I hope Helen **will**.

This is not the only way to speak about future in English.
 When we talk about our *plans* and *things we have decided to do*, we often use **to be going to...**

to be going to...

+/-

I	am/am not
You	are/aren't
He, She, It	is/isn't

We	are/aren't
You	are/aren't
They	are/aren't

going to...

?

Am I	
Is he, she, it	
Are we, you, they	

going to...?

- 7 You and your friend are going to start a pop group. Complete these sentences about who is going to do what.

EXAMPLE: Nick/be/a singer.
Nick is going to be a singer.

1. I/play/the piano.
2. Mary/play/the guitar.
3. John/learn to play/the violin.
4. Nick's sister/write/songs for us.
5. My father/pay/for the instruments.
6. Tim/organize ['ɔ:gənaɪz]/our concerts.
7. We/become/famous.

- 8 Find out what Mrs Brown is telling her son. Use *will* (//) or *won't*.

One day you ¹ be a parent. You ² have children. They ³ think you're old. They ⁴ listen to you. They ⁵ like the things you like. They ⁶ laugh at you. And you ⁷ like it. You ⁸! You ⁹ understand it! You ¹⁰ think they're too young. You ¹¹ think you're right. It ¹² be the same thing. So, please do what I say.

Do you think the son will do what his mother asks him to? What about you?

- 9 Make the sentences complete using *will/shall* or *be going to*...

EXAMPLE: I like it when you play the guitar. ... you play and sing for us?
I like it when you play the guitar. Will you play and sing for us?

1. The latest news is on now. I ... to watch TV.
2. I have bought two tickets for the new opera. I ... to the Bolshoi Theatre with my mother.
3. When ... you visit New York?
4. What ... you to do tonight?
5. He hasn't decided yet where he ... work next month.
6. She wants to go to Moscow alone, so she ... to take her little cousin with her.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

There are three main ways of talking about the future in English. Two of them you already know. (See "Brush up Your Grammar".) But you can also use the **present continuous tense** to talk about your *plans* or *things you have decided to do*, especially with the verbs **to go, to come, to arrive, to move, to leave, to have**.

I'm travelling to Rome tomorrow. = **I'm going to travel** to Rome tomorrow.

Jill is not coming with us. = **Jill is not going to come** with us.

When are you leaving for Washington DC? = **When are you going to leave** for Washington DC?

We are having a party next Saturday night. **Who is coming?** = **We are going to have** a party next Saturday night. **Who is going to come?**

Express the same idea in another way.

EXAMPLE: He is going to have a meeting at 10 o'clock tomorrow.

He is having a meeting at 10 o'clock tomorrow.

1. The plane is going to arrive half an hour later.
2. My friends are going to come to Moscow for the weekend.
3. My grandparents are going to move into a new flat next week.
4. When are they going to arrive?
5. She is going to leave for St. Petersburg in two days.

Look at the table and, using your imagination and the present continuous tense, say who, when and what is going to do.

EXAMPLE: Jane is arriving in Moscow at 5.30 tomorrow.

<u>Arriving</u>	<u>Leaving</u>
1) Jane, 5.30	1) She, for the airport
2) Jill, next Monday	2) Bob, Moscow, at 6
3) Fred and Bill, tomorrow	3) The Browns, for London
<u>Coming</u>	<u>Moving</u>
1) Elizabeth, to Paris	1) into a new flat
2) George's parents, next Friday	2) to her summer cottage
3) They, 7.15	3) to the country house
<u>Having</u>	<u>Going</u>
1) We, a party	1) The Greens, away, next month
2) They, a concert	2) He, to Africa
3) The engineers, a conference	3) We, to India, in 5 days

12 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) fact [fækt] | plantator [plæn'tetə] |
| role [rəʊl] | conservative [kən'sɜ:vətɪv] |
| legend ['ledʒənd] | president ['prezɪdənt] |
| rocket ['rɒkɪt] | academician [ə,kædə'mɪʃn] |
| tradition [trə'dɪʃn] | university [ju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪti] |
- 2) Arkhangelsk [ɑ:'kæŋgelsk]
 Moscow University ['mʊskəʊ ju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪti]
 the Pacific Ocean [ðə pə'sɪfɪk 'əʊʃn]
 Australia [ə'streɪliə]
 James Cook [dʒeɪmz 'kʊk]
 George Washington [dʒɔ:dʒ 'wɒʃɪŋtən]
 Virginia [və'dʒɪniə]
 Scotland ['skɒtlənd]
 Wales [weɪlz]

Northern Ireland [nɔ:ðən 'aɪələnd]
Guy Fawkes' Day [gaɪ 'fɔ:ks deɪ]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

caviar	science
custom	scientist
honey	scientific
hope	village
pancake	space
sour cream	spaceship

c) Read the word combinations and sentences to know how to use these words.

Many people think that **caviar** is the national food of Russian people. Caviar has become very expensive now.

Some people eat **pancakes** with caviar, some of them like pancakes with **sour cream** or **honey**. I am not sure he is fond of sour cream.

Do you know any interesting American **customs**?

Traditions and customs are different in **Scotland**, **Wales** and **Northern Ireland**.

Is it going to snow? — I **hope** so.

Is it going to rain? — I hope not. Let's hope for the best.

The 20th century is the century of **science**.

When he was a student at **Moscow University** he was fond of sciences.

A person who knows much about a science is a **scientist**. M. Lomonosov was a great Russian scientist. What famous British scientists do you know?

S. Korolev's **scientific** theories and discoveries have changed a lot in the world of science.

The planet Earth and everything and everyone on it are in **space**. Yuri Gagarin, the famous Russian cosmonaut, was the first man in the world to have a voyage¹ in space.

Yuri Gagarin made a space voyage around the world on board the **spaceship** "Vostok" on the 12th of April, 1961.

voyage ['vɔɪdʒ] — 1) морское путешествие 2) полет

Who was the first man to walk in space? The Russian cosmonaut Alexey Leonov was.

A **village** is a small group of houses in the country. James Cook, a great English discoverer and traveller was born in a small village.

- 13 Listen to the new words, [21]. Read them aloud after the speaker to check their pronunciation.

Group one: Arkhangelsk, Moscow University, the Pacific Ocean, Australia, Virginia, Scotland, Wales, Northern Ireland, James Cook, George Washington, Guy Fawkes' Day.

Group two: caviar, a custom, honey, to hope, a pancake, sour cream, science, a scientist, scientific, a village, space, a spaceship.

- 14 Look at the pictures and name in English the food you see in them.



МЕД



СМЕТАНА



КЕФА



БАННИ

- 15 Choose two possible answers to the questions.

- What is the traditional Russian food?
a) pancakes with caviar; b) pancakes with honey;
c) pancakes with sour cream.
- What is the traditional American food?
a) roast turkey; b) roast chicken; c) hamburgers.
- What is the traditional British food?
a) porridge; b) bacon and eggs; c) tea with lemon.

Say what the names for the following are:

- eggs of large fishes;
- the food people in Russia usually eat during Maslenitsa week;
- a small group of houses in the country, which is not a settlement and is smaller than a town;
- a ship which travels in space;
- a person who knows much about a science;
- systematic knowledge.

Look at the portraits of the Russian, English and American people and say what you can about them.



was born in the Kholmogory settlement
near the city of Arkhangelsk
father was a seaman
started to study at the age of 19
became the first Russian Academician
[ə,kædə'mɪjən] at the age of 33
founded Moscow University in 1755
a great scientist
made a lot of discoveries in different
fields of science
a monument to M. Lomonosov is in
Moscow



was born in a small village near the
city of Smolensk
was interested in planes, spaceships,
rockets
became the first world cosmonaut at
the age of 27
flew into space on the 12th of April,
1961 on board the spaceship "Vostok"
the monument to Y. Gagarin is in
Moscow in Gagarin Square

was born in an English village
 father was a poor farmer
 became a seaman, traveller and discoverer
 made three voyages around the world
 discovered a lot of islands in the Pacific Ocean [pə'sɪfɪk 'əʊʃn], explored the eastern coast¹ of Australia



James Cook
(1728-1779)

was born in America, state of Virginia
 a son of a rich plantator
 became an American general at the age of 43
 took part in the War of Independence (1775-1783) against Britain
 fought many battles
 won a lot of battles in the War of Independence
 the first US President (1789-1797)



George Washington
(1732-1799)

18 Answer the questions (see ex. 17).

1. When was Lomonosov born?
2. Who was the first Russian cosmonaut? Who was the first man to walk in space?
3. Who was the first Russian Academician?
4. When did Lomonosov found Moscow University?
5. Where was Gagarin from and what was he interested in?
6. What was James Cook?
7. How many voyages around the world did he make?
8. What did James Cook discover?
9. Who was the first US President?
10. In what battles did Washington take part?

¹ a coast [kəʊst] — побережье

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 19 Listen to the poem "A Question", 22, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

A QUESTION

(by Edith Segal)

Some people live in the country
Where the houses are very small.
Some people live in the city,
Where the houses are very tall.
But in the country where the houses are small,
The gardens are very big,
And in the city where the houses are tall,
There are no gardens at all.
Where would you rather live?

LET US READ

- 20 Read the text. Try and prove that every country has its own traditions and customs.

MORE ABOUT BRITISH AND RUSSIAN TRADITIONS

Every nation and every country has its own traditions and customs. In Britain traditions play a more important role in the life of people than in other countries. They say British people are very conservative [kən'sɜ:vətɪv]. They are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up. But when we speak about British traditions we always remember that there are four parts in Britain — England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. Traditions are different in these parts of the country.

You already know some of the English traditions and holidays. We hope you remember St. Valentine's Day, St. Patrick's Day, Halloween which have also become traditional American



holidays. Here are some more facts about old English traditions.

The ravens¹ are one of the most famous sights at the Tower of London. They have lived in the Tower from its very beginning, over 900 years ago and as one of the old English legends ['lɛʒəndz] says, only so long as they are here will the Tower stand. If the ravens leave the Tower of London, the Crown and England will fall. One can say the ravens hold the power of the Crown itself. But the birds have never left the Tower. In the 17th century King Charles II ordered that six ravens should always live in the Tower of London and since then they have been under Royal protection. The ravens are black. Each raven has got its name and the keepers carefully look after them. If one of the birds dies, another younger raven takes its place. Londoners believe this legend and though they shouldn't bring food to give to the birds when they come to the Tower. The keepers cut the birds' wings² a bit as they are afraid that they may fly away.

Another old English custom is Guy Fawkes' Day.³ As it gets dark on the 5th of November (and before) children go out into

¹ a raven ['reɪvn] — ворон

² a wing [wɪŋ] — крыло

³ Guy Fawkes' Day [ˌɡaɪ ˈfɔːks deɪ] — День Гая Фокса



the streets with a figure [figə] like a scarecrow.¹ They stand in the streets and squares asking for "a Penny for the Guy". Then with the money they have collected they buy fireworks² and burn the guy (the figure like a scarecrow) on their bonfire.³

People watch the fireworks and some people go to parties in the evening.

People in Russia have their own special traditions. One of them is Maslenitsa — the holiday, which lasts for a week, to say goodbye to winter. People celebrate it at the end of February or at the beginning of March. During this holiday they celebrate the end of winter and the beginning of spring. In old



a scarecrow [ˈskeɪkrəʊ] — чучело
firework [ˈfaɪəwɜːk] — фейерверк
bonfire [ˈbɒnfaɪə] — большой костер

times people usually cooked pancakes, had fires, burnt straw¹ figures of winter, they sang songs and danced. Now during "Maslenitsa week" people always cook pancakes. They invite their friends, their nearest and dearest, to see each other and eat pancakes with sour cream, fish, caviar or butter, sugar, honey.

Though different countries have different traditions and holidays people all over the world know some of them. They are — Easter, Christmas and New Year.

21 'True', 'False' or 'Don't Know'.

1. Every country has its own traditions and customs.
2. There are no common² traditions all over the world.
3. English people celebrate Maslenitsa.
4. There are some common holidays in England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.
5. The ravens have been in the Tower of London since Charles II.
6. English people celebrate Guy Fawkes' Day on the 5th of November.
7. Russian people seldom eat pancakes with caviar now.

22 Divide the text into logical parts and name them.

LET US TALK

- 23** You have found a few new facts about Russian and English traditions in the text (ex. 20). What other customs, traditions and holidays in these countries do you remember? Get ready to speak about some of them.
- 24** Say a few words about the history and main cities in one of these countries — Russia, Britain, the USA.
- 25** What Russian, British and American symbols do you remember? Tell your friend, who is interested in these countries, everything you can.
- 26** We are not sure your classmates know much about famous people of different countries. Ask them questions to find out.

¹ straw [strɔ:] — а) солома; б) соломенный

² common ['kɒmən] — ад. общие

LET US WRITE

- 7 Do ex. 6 (a, b or c) and ex. 10 in writing.
- 8 A friend of yours is going to have a birthday party. You want to know more about it. Write not less than 5 questions.

EXAMPLE: When/you/have your birthday party?
When are you going to have your birthday party?

1. How many people/you/invite?
2. What time/the party/start?
3. Where/you/have/the party?
4. Who/cook/the food?
5. What/you/wear?

- 9 Make friendly answers to these questions using *will* or *won't*.

EXAMPLE: Will it be an interesting travel?
I'm sure it will. (No, of course, it won't.)

1. Will you help me to learn something about the symbols of America and Britain?
2. Will people laugh at this idea?
3. Will you tell me something about the main cities of Russia?
4. Will you take me to the central square of your city?
5. Will you tell me a few words about famous Russian people?

- 10 Learn to write these words.

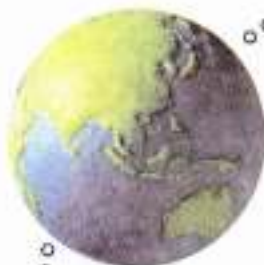
caviar, custom, honey, hope, pancake, sour cream, science, scientific, scientist, village, space, spaceship

Listening Comprehension, ☐ 23, text "Blue Jeans"

Home Reading Lesson 5, text "Special Days"

Home Reading Lesson 6, text "The Hot Dog"

BASIC COURSE



THE WORLD
AROUND US

THE
GEOGRAPHY AND
POLITICAL OUTLOOK
OF THE UK



HEALTH
AND
BODY CARE



SPORTS
AND
GAMES



SHOPPING





THE WORLD AROUND US

LESSON 6

LET US REVIEW

- 1 You already know some words about nature, about the world around us. Let's play a memory game. Look at the words for a moment, then close the book and name everything you remember.

Seaside, ocean, earth, river, lake, sea, forest, field, hill, mountain, continent, star, moon, sun, plant, tree, leaf, flower, grass, water, stone, ground, space, garden, road, wind, land, rain, snow, island, birch, planet.

- 2 Choose the words connected¹ with a) water, b) plants, c) places on the earth. Write them in three columns. (See ex. 1.)
- 3 Think of names for them:
- a) the part of a plant which is often beautiful and coloured;
 - b) a large area of land with lots of trees;
 - c) a large water body flowing to a sea or an ocean;
 - d) a big bright body in the sky from which the earth gets light;
 - e) a space body in the sky which moves round the earth and shines at night.
- 4 Pretend you are a teacher. Let your classmates answer the questions.
- 1. What long rivers of the world can you name?
 - 2. What do you find on the earth?

¹ connect [kə'nekt] — связывать, соединять

3. What can you see in the fields and forests?
4. What can you see in the sky?
5. Is England situated on an island or on the continent?
What about Canada?
6. How many continents are there in the world?

- 5 Describe your favourite season for your classmates to guess.
- 6 Do you remember what people usually say when they meet each other? If not, look at the list of examples.

How do you do? (*very formal*)
Hello.
Hi.
Good morning.
Morning.

Good afternoon.
Good evening.
Evening.

CF

After such a greeting people usually say:

How **are** you?

CF

Your answer usually is:

Fine. Thanks. What about you?
Fine. Thanks. How are **you**?

Very well. Thank you.
OK. Thank you.

CF

- 7 Listen to the dialogue,  24. Learn it by heart.

- Hi! How *are* you?
- Very well. Thanks. How are *you*?
- I am *fine*. How are your parents?
- Fine. What about yours?
- They are fine too.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Adj + -th = N

warm — warmth [wɜ:mθ]

long — length [lenθ]

wide — width [widθ]

strong — strength [streŋθ]

We think you know the meanings of the adjectives: *warm, long, wide, strong*. Then guess the meanings of the nouns: *warmth, length, width, strength*. (Mind the spelling and the pronunciation.)

Make the right choice.

1. What is the (*long, length*) of the corridor?
2. How (*long, length*) is the street?
3. He is not (*strong, strength*) enough to fight with John.
4. My brother can lift the box because of his (*strong, strength*).
5. Alice's skirt is too (*wide, width*).
6. We can't get the piano through the door because of its (*wide, width*).
7. Is spring a (*warm, warmth*) season?
8. We felt the (*warm, warmth*) of the sun on our faces and hands.

These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

nation ['neiʃn], nationality [ˌnæʃə'nælɪti]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

curious

rise

explore

continue

set

separate

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

curious ['kjʊərəs] (*adj*): 'Curious' means eager¹ to learn about things that are new, strange or interesting. If a child is curious, he's always asking questions. I'm curious to know what he said. Was he really curious to know more about the new planet? My little brother is very curious, he always asks a lot of questions.

explore [ɪk'splɔː] (*v*): 'To explore' is to travel in unknown lands for the purpose of discovery. Did our cosmonauts explore space to learn what it is like? Columbus discovered America but he did not explore the new continent.

an explorer [ɪk'splɔːrə] (*n*) is one who explores.

exploration [ɪksplə'reɪʃn] (*n*): Did the exploration of space begin in Russia?

set [set] (**set, set**) (*v*): 'To set' means here to go down. Is the sun setting? It will be colder when the sun has set. When will the sun set? Where does the sun set? — It sets in the west.

rise [raɪz] (**rose, risen**) (*v*): What time does the sun rise? He rose from his seat to welcome me. They rose from table. Look! The curtain is rising. Why did the wind suddenly rise?

continue [kən'tɪnjuː] (*v*): 'To continue' means to go on without stopping. The snowfall continued for two days. Tom continued his work though he felt bad. You must continue your study of English. After a short break the play continued.

separate ['sepəreɪt] (*v*): to separate (the) countries, to separate two gardens. What does the sea separate? It separates the two countries. The mountains separate the two continents. Who separated the good apples from the bad ones? What separates England from France?

nation ['neɪʃn] (*n*): 'A nation' is a large group of people living together, having the same history, customs, traditions and language. When we speak of the American people we speak of a group that came from all parts of the world to form the American nation. Are Russians a peace-loving nation?

national [næʃnəl] (*adj*): What Russian national holidays do you know? Where is the National Bank? Have you ever been to

¹ eager ['eɪgə] — желающий, стремящийся

the National Gallery in London? The national anthem¹ of Great Britain is "God Save the King/Queen".

nationality [næʃə'nælɪtɪ] (n): What is your nationality? — I'm Russian.

11 Say it right: make the sentences complete using *continue*, *curious*, *rise*, *set*, *explore*, *separate*, *nationality*.

1. This boy is very ..., he always asks a lot of questions.
2. What's his ...? — He is Russian.
3. The river ... the two parts of the city.
4. Yuri Gagarin was the first to ... space.
5. The sun ... earlier in winter than in summer.
6. I'm ... to know what has happened to her.
7. Why did the wind suddenly ...?
8. The rainfall ... for the whole week.

12 Ask questions for your classmates to answer.

1. What can separate the two continents?
2. What is your nationality?
3. Are Russians a peace-loving nation?
4. The sea separates England from France, doesn't it?
5. When do we call a person curious?
6. What is the national anthem of Great Britain?
7. When does the sun rise in summer? When does it set?
8. What is the length of the main street of Moscow?

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

used to

Used [ju:st] to refers to repeated actions in the past (past customs).

+

He **used to** live in Kursk (but now he doesn't).

She **used to** have long hair (but now she doesn't have it long).

I **used to** go to the South every summer (but now I don't).

¹anthem [ˈænθəm] — гимн

My brother **didn't use to** like fish when a child. (*more often used*) = My brother **used not to** like fish when a child.
He **didn't use to** speak loudly. (*more often used*) = He **used not to** speak loudly.

?

Did you use to be good friends when you were children?
Did they use to spend summer in the mountains?

Pronunciation

Used in used to is pronounced [ju:st].
The verb **to use** in the past indefinite (**used**) is pronounced [ju:zd].

13 Say:

— what sort [sa:t] of food you used to eat when you were a child;

EXAMPLE: I used to drink a lot of milk.

— what the people in your family used to do in summer;

EXAMPLE: My father used to swim a lot.

— what your friends used to wear in winter.

EXAMPLE: Sasha used to wear a warm sweater.

14 Mr Brown is rather poor now. But when he was young he used to be rich and famous.

a) Look at the picture on the next page and say what he used to do then.

EXAMPLE: He used to go to restaurants.

b) Use your imagination and say what he didn't use to do.

EXAMPLE: He didn't use to go boating in autumn.



c) Ask questions about what he used to do.

EXAMPLE: Did he use to buy expensive furniture?

LET US READ AND LEARN

5. Listen to the song "The Beauty of the World", part 1. 25.

THE BEAUTY OF THE WORLD

Part 1

I used to see the stars at night.

I used to hear the birds.

I used to feel the warmth of the sun.

beauty ['bjuti] — красота

I used to smell¹ the springtime flowers.
And sing so happily.
I used to sing a song about the beauty of the world.

- 16 Listen to the talk, [26] 26. Read it and act it out.

OLD LADIES TALKING

Mrs Roberts: Oh, hello, dear. I'm so glad to meet you. This is Kate, my granddaughter.

Mrs Brown: Nice to meet you, Kate. How are you?

Kate: Fine, thanks. Granny, can I wait for you somewhere?

Mrs Roberts: OK, Kate, go and buy some cola. Explore the bar [bu:]. (*Kate goes to the bar.*) You know she is not very brave, when she meets new people.

Mrs Brown: I **used to** be that way when I was her age. Though I was always **curious** and asked my parents a lot of questions.

Mrs Roberts: Oh, she also does. She is very much interested in geography now. And I can hear her questions all day long "What is the **length** of the Mississippi? What sea **separates** Africa from Europe? Where does the sun **set** and where does it **rise**?" She starts asking questions early in the morning and **continues** till late at night. Oh, here she goes with a big bottle ['bɒl] of cola.

- 17 Listen to the talk of ex. 16 again, [26] 26, and read out the right sentences from below.

1. a) Kate meets her friend.
b) Mrs Roberts meets Mrs Brown.
c) Mrs Roberts and Kate meet Mrs Brown.
2. a) Kate is going to explore the bar.
b) Kate explored the bar.
c) Kate explores the bar.
3. a) Kate used not to be brave.
b) Kate used to be brave.
c) Mrs Brown used not to be brave.

¹ smell [smel] — запах; чувствовать запах

4. a) Mrs Brown is curious.
b) Mrs Roberts is curious.
c) Kate is curious.
5. a) Kate wants to know the length of the Mississippi.
b) Kate wants to know the width of the Thames.
c) Kate wants to know the length of the Seine.
6. a) Kate never continues to ask questions in the evening.
b) Kate continues to ask questions in the evening.
c) Mrs Brown continues to ask questions all day long.

LET US READ

- 18 Learn to read these proper names:

Europe [ˈjʊərəp]

Asia [ˈeɪʃə]

Australia [əˈstreɪliə]

Antarctic [ænˈtæktɪk]

the Vatican [ˈvætɪkən]

France [frɑːns]

Spain [speɪn]

Germany [ˈdʒɜːmən]

Vietnam [ˈviətˈnæm]

China [ˈtʃaɪnə]

Iceland [ˈaɪslənd]

Egypt [ˈɪdʒɪpt]

Italy [ˈɪtəli]

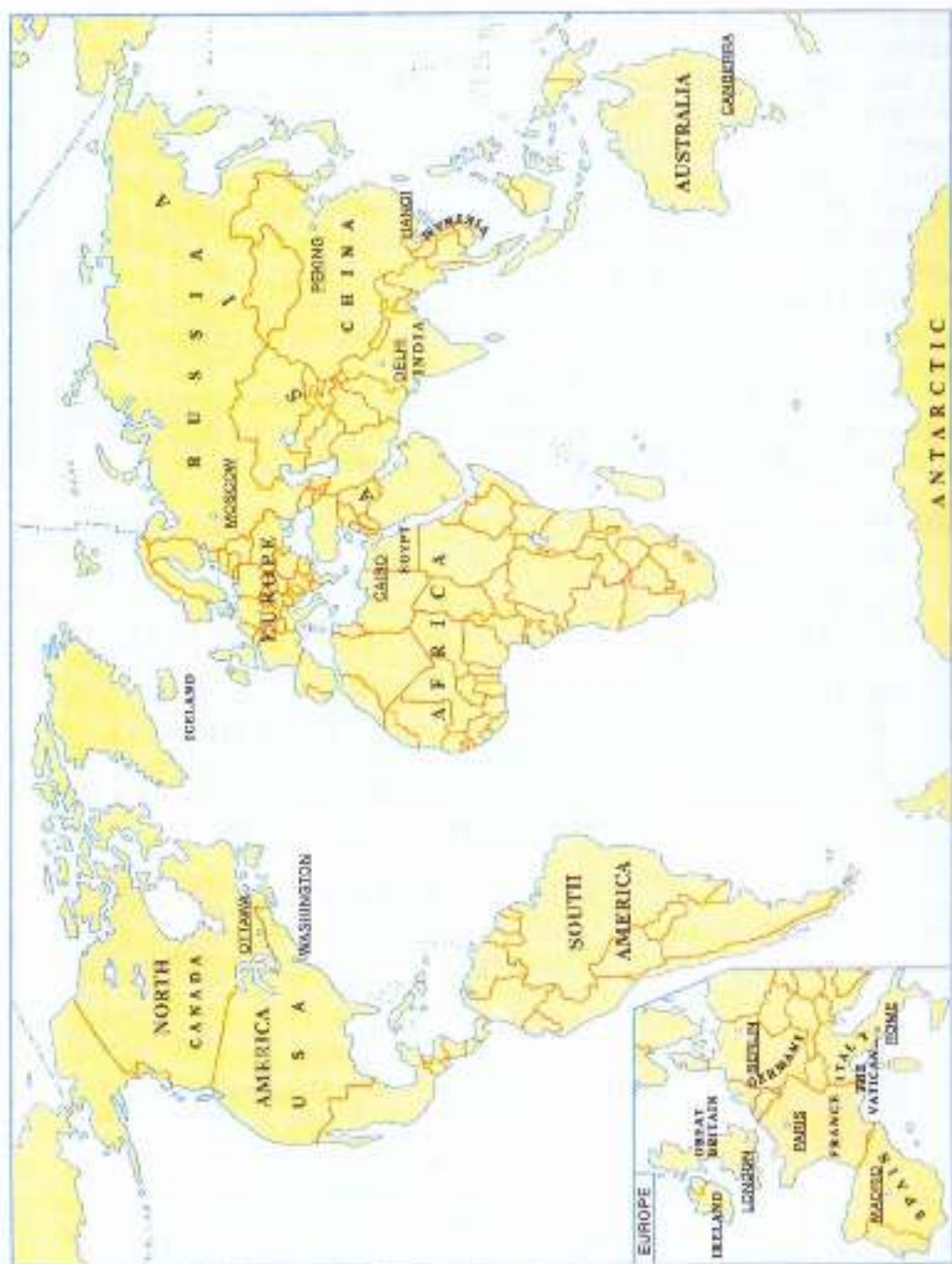
- 19 Read the text "Continents and Countries" to get some new information about the world around us. Say what the smallest country in the world is.

CONTINENTS AND COUNTRIES

The planet we live on is the Earth. The Earth is round. If you look at the Earth from space you will be able to see land, seas, oceans, continents and even countries. Sometimes you can see them through clouds.¹ They look very beautiful when the sun rises or sets.

There are four oceans and six continents. The continents are: Europe and Asia, Africa, America, Australia, Antarctic. America consists of North America and South America. The continents are very large. Oceans and seas wash them and separate them from each other. There are usually many countries

¹ cloud [klaʊd] — облако



on each continent. For example, there are more than 40 countries in Africa, but there is only one large country in Australia. It has got almost the same name as the continent. Australia is a very big country, but some countries are small. Iceland is a very small country. It is situated on an island to the north of Europe. Let's name some countries from each continent: Russia, Great Britain, France, Germany, Spain, Italy are in Europe. China, India, Vietnam are in Asia. Canada and the United States are in America. Egypt is an African country.

The largest country in the world is Russia. The smallest country is the Vatican. All the countries have interesting people, places, animals and plants.

People of different nationalities live in these countries. They speak different languages. Each country has its national flag, anthem and its own traditions and customs.

20 Now you have learnt some facts about geography. Could you answer the questions?

1. What is the name of the planet we live on?
2. What will you be able to see if you look at the Earth from space?
3. How many oceans are there on our planet?
4. How many continents are there? What are they?
5. What separates the continents from each other?
6. There are many countries on each continent, aren't there?
7. What is the largest country in the world?

Reference Material¹

<i>Flag</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Capital</i>
	<u>EUROPE</u> Russia	Moscow

¹ Reference Material ['referəns mə'tiəriəl] — Справочный Материал

<i>Flag</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Capital</i>
	Great Britain	London
	France	Paris ['pæris]
	Germany	Berlin [bɜ:'lɪn]
	Spain	Madrid [mə'drɪd]
	Italy	Rome [rəʊm]
ASIA		
	China	Peking [pi'kiŋ]
	India	Delhi ['deli]
	Vietnam	Hanoi [hæ'noi]

<i>Flag</i>	<i>Country</i>	<i>Capital</i>
	<u>AMERICA</u> Canada	Ottawa ['ɒləwə]
	The United States	Washington DC ['wɒʃɪŋtən 'di:si:]
	<u>AFRICA</u> Egypt	Cairo ['kaɪərəʊ]
	<u>AUSTRALIA</u> Australia	Canberra ['kænbərə]

<i>Country</i>	<i>Nationality</i>	<i>Language</i>
Russia Great Britain France Germany Spain Italy	<u>EUROPE</u> Russian English French German Spanish (Spaniard) Italian	Russian English French German Spanish Italian
China India Vietnam	<u>ASIA</u> Chinese [ˌtʃaɪˈniːz] Indian Vietnamese [ˌviɛtnəˈmiːz]	Chinese Hindi ['hɪndi], English Vietnamese

<i>Country</i>	<i>Nationality</i>	<i>Language</i>
Canada The United States of America	<u>AMERICA</u>	English, French English
	Canadian American	
Egypt	<u>AFRICA</u>	Arabic [æɹəbɪk]
	Egyptian [ɪ'dʒɪptʃən]	
Australia	<u>AUSTRALIA</u>	English
	Australian	

LET US TALK

- 21 Look through the *Reference Material* and name: 3 countries in Europe, 2 countries in Asia, 2 countries in America. What are their capitals? Find their national flags and say what their colours are.
- 22 Could you give the name of the continent which is almost the same as the name of the country situated on it? What language do people speak there? What is its capital? Find its national flag and describe it.
- 23 What languages do people who live in Canada speak? What is the capital of Canada? What are the colours of the Canadian national flag?
- 24 Imagine that you're at an international [ˌɪntə'næʃnəl] conference ['kɒnfərəns]. Say what your name (nationality) is, where you are from and what language you speak.

EXAMPLE: My name is Van Lee. I'm from Vietnam. I'm Vietnamese. My language is Vietnamese.

Lorance/France
Tony/Italy
Lisa/Germany
Lucille/France

Carmen/Spain
Hans/Germany
George/Canada
Ahmad/Egypt

- 25 Tell the class what new information about the Earth and people on it you've learnt. Here is the plan to help you.

1. The Earth from space.
2. The continents.
3. The countries (the smallest and the largest ones).
4. People, nationalities, languages.

LET US WRITE

- 26 Copy the table and fill it in.

<i>Country</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>Nationality</i>	<i>Language</i>
	Ottawa		
Australia			
		American	
			Spanish
	Rome		
			Arabic
Germany			

- 27 Write the names of the countries:

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1) nadaca | 3) ssirua | 5) anihe |
| 2) ncefra | 4) iyatl | 6) aauiatr |

28 Write the names of the capitals:

- 1) of Germany 2) of France 3) of Egypt 4) of Great Britain
5) of Canada 6) of Australia

29 Express the following in English.

1) Солнце встает на востоке, а садится на западе. 2) Они продолжали жить в маленькой деревне. 3) Когда мы были маленькими, мы обычно играли с игрушечными слонами и другими игрушечными животными. 4) Какие горы отделяют Европу от Азии? 5) Откуда Анна родом? — Она из Франции. Она родилась в Париже. Французский — ее родной язык. 6) Какого цвета национальный флаг России?

30 Open the brackets and make the story complete.

FOR THOSE WHO LIKE TO TRAVEL

One day a Paris newspaper (*have*) an advertisement¹ about a very cheap way of travelling. Many people (*believe*) it and (*send*) their money. A few days later each of them (*get*) a letter. The letter (*read*): "Sir, (*rest*) in bed and (*remember*) that the Earth (*turn*). Paris (*turn*) together with the Earth. You (*travel*) more than 25,000 kilometres a day. You (*may*) (*look*) out of the window and (*enjoy*) your journey."

31 Learn to write these words.

curious, to explore, explorer, exploration, to set (set, set), to rise (rose, risen), to continue, to separate, nation, national, nationality

Listening Comprehension, 27, text "Things Used to Be Different Many Years Ago"

Home Reading Lesson 7, text "Between the Sun and the Earth"

¹ advertisement [əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt] — объявление

LESSON 7

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Look at the pictures of the flags. Name the countries, say what languages people speak in those countries and what nationalities they are.



- 2 Use your imagination and say what their names are and where they are from.

My name is I am English.
I'm from





My name is I am Australian.
I'm from



My name is I am Chinese.
I'm from



My name is I am French.
I'm from



My name is I am Canadian.
I'm from



My name is I am Russian.
I'm from

Say in what countries and on what continents these cities are situated. The *Reference Material* of Lesson 6 can help you.

EXAMPLE: Cairo is in Africa. It is in Egypt.

Cairo, Berlin, Rome, Delhi, Ottawa, Madrid, Washington DC.

Say when these cosmonauts were in space (flew into space).

Yuri Gagarin, 1961; Valentina Tereshkova, 1963; Alexey Leonov, 1965, 1975; German Titov, 1961; Andrean Nikolaev, 1962, 1970

Which of the Russian cosmonauts was the first into space and when was it?

Liza, Betty, Lorance and Mary are fond of learning languages. Look at the table and say: what languages they already know and what languages they are learning.

EXAMPLE: Mary already knows Italian, she is learning the French language and the Spanish language now.

	<i>knows</i>	<i>wants to know</i>
Mary	Italian	the French language
Liza	English	the Spanish language
Betty	French	the Italian language
Lorance	German	the English language
	Arabic	the Russian language
	Spanish	
	Chinese	

Make up true sentences using the table.

The seas	separate	the countries.
The mountains		the continents.
The forests	separates	the cities.
The river		the islands.
The ocean		
The sea		

- 8 Say what the children *used to do* and what is happening now. Use the given word combinations.

EXAMPLE: — to live on the farm
Nick used to live on the farm in summer, now he is living in town (*or but now he doesn't*).

- to take a holiday in the mountains,
- to watch the sunset,
- to watch the sunrise,
- to go fishing,
- to be very curious,
- to explore new territories.

- 9 Disagree.

EXAMPLE: a) Susan used to have long hair last year.
Oh, no, she didn't. She used to have short hair last year.
b) We used not to play these games when we were children.
Oh, yes, you did. You used to play these games when you were children.

- 1) When Harry was little he used to cry a lot.
- 2) They used to explore the forests when they were in South Africa.
- 3) She used not to like fish.
- 4) He used not to work in that company.
- 5) We used to be good friends.
- 6) Nelly used to be interested in stamps.
- 7) John used not to be fond of animals.

- 10 Express your doubt.

EXAMPLE: Nelly used to explore new lands with her father who is an explorer.
Did she really use to explore new lands?

1. My granny used to cook fantastic pancakes.
2. My grandad used to be a scientist.

3. Nelly used to be very much interested in science.
4. The pupils used to learn a lot about history and the main cities of Russia.
5. She used to live in a small village.
6. He used to get interesting information about space and space trips.

- 11** Try and remember what people usually say when they part. The list of examples below can help you.

Goodbye, see you tomorrow.	So long, see you soon.
Goodbye, see you on Monday.	So long, see you again.
Bye-bye, see you. (See you around.)	
Goodbye, I hope to see you some day.	

C
F

When you answer you can say the same or you can add:

Have a nice day!	Have fun!
Have a nice weekend!	Have a good time!
Have a good trip!	

C
F

After this people usually say:

Thanks.
Thanks, you too!
Thanks, the same to you.

C
F

- 12** Listen to the dialogues,  28. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

- 1) — So long, Helen.
— Bye, Nick. See you on Monday. Have a nice weekend.
— Thanks, you *too*.
- 2) — Goodbye, Mr Wilson. It was so nice to meet you.
— Goodbye, Ann. It was nice meeting *you*. Hope to see you some day.
- 3) — So long, Nelly. See you soon.
— Bye, Fred. See you.

- 4) — Bye, Marilyn.
— Goodbye. See you tomorrow. Have fun!

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Past Continuous

was/were + Ving

+/-

I	}	was/wasn't	} sleeping at 5 o'clock yesterday.
He			
She			
We	}	were/weren't	
You			
They			

?

Was { I
he
she } sleeping at 5 o'clock
yesterday?

Yes, I (he, she) was.
No, I (he, she) wasn't.

Were { we
you
they } sleeping at 5 o'clock
yesterday?

Yes, we (you, they)
were.
No, we (you, they)
weren't.

While¹ Jane was reading a book, Susan was watching TV.
While Nick was skiing in the mountains, Teddy was
swimming in the ocean.

¹ while [waɪl] — в то время как

While Ann was drawing a picture, Fred was writing a letter.

They were playing football when their mother came. Teddy was speaking over the phone when the door bell rang.

- 13 Say what the people were doing yesterday at different time.

EXAMPLE: Robert was speaking on the phone at 2.45 yesterday.

1. Robert (2.45/to speak) on the phone.
2. Nelly and Ann (11.30/to move) into a new flat.
3. Mrs Brown (5.45/to sell) vegetables.
4. The Greens (8.00/to sail) to St. Petersburg.
5. Pete and Jack (7.00/to fight) each other.
6. Bill (10.15/to prepare) for his classes.
7. Andrew and Ted (4.30/to listen to) the music.

- 14 Say what Andrew's relatives were doing when he came home.

EXAMPLE: When Andrew came home, his mother was cooking dinner.

1. Mother/to cook dinner.
2. Grandparents/to watch a feature film on TV.
3. Father/to read a newspaper.
4. Uncle/to look through the magazine.
5. Aunts/to make jam.
6. Cousins/to play with toys on the floor.
7. Little brother/to cry.

- 15 Mrs Brown has got 8 children. She went out to do the shopping and asked her children to help her. But they didn't. She is back home and asks her children: "What were you doing while I was shopping?"

One of her "good" children answers: "While you were shopping, I was washing up."

Give the other children's answers. The word combinations in the box on the next page will help you.

to make one's bed, to cook dinner, to wash the floor, to make tea, to clean the carpet, to clean the clothes, to wash the window

- 16 Look at the pictures and say what her children were really doing.



- 17 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

international [ˌɪntəˈnæʃnəl]

practically ['præktɪklɪ]

an apartment [ən ə'pɑːtmənt]

an equivalent [ən ɪ'kwɪvələnt]

New Zealand [njuː 'ziːlənd]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

while

both

nowadays

foreign

use

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

while [waɪl] (*conj*): 'While' means during the time that ...
While he was taking a shower, his friend was washing up. I was looking through the magazine, while Nelly was speaking to her aunt.

nowadays [ˈnaʊdeɪz] (*adv*): 'Nowadays' means at the present time, in these days. Do most people travel by plane nowadays?

use [juːz] (*v*), to use — used: May I use your textbook? — You certainly may. When we walk we use our legs and feet. I don't know how to use this rule. Are you using this dictionary?

both [bəʊθ] (*pron*): 'Both' means the two, the one as well as the other. Were both boys playing football? They were both tired and hungry. I want both books (I want both of them).

foreign [ˈfɔrɪn] (*adj*): Have you ever visited any foreign countries? What foreign languages does she speak? He doesn't speak any foreign languages.

18 Make up sentences using the table.

People	learn	foreign languages	nowadays.
		by plane	
Most people	travel	by train	
		by sea	
Many people	watch	cartoons	
		videos	
Many people	read	feature films	
		a lot of books	
		a lot of newspapers	
		a lot of magazines	

19 Say what things you use:

- to buy vegetables and fruit,
- to write letters,
- to learn foreign languages,
- to cook dinner,
- to drink coffee/mineral water,
- to eat soup.

EXAMPLE: I use money to buy fruit.

- 20** Say you are fond of both things.

EXAMPLE: I am fond of both fruit and vegetables.

- fruit, vegetables;
- tea, coffee;
- milk, water;
- country life, town life;
- short stories, long novels;
- cartoons, feature films;
- to travel by sea, to travel by plane;
- to ski, to skate;
- to work at home, to work at the library.

- 21** Let your classmate give you some information to express your surprise. Use the example.

EXAMPLE: P₁: I have never been to the Bolshoi Theatre.

P₂: You don't say (so)!

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 22** Listen to the song "The Beauty of the World", part II, □□ 29.

THE BEAUTY OF THE WORLD

Part II

It was a long, long time ago,
I used to sing a song.
Before the black smoke¹ filled² the sky,
I used to sing a song.
I used to sing a song about the beauty of the world.

¹ smoke [sməʊk] — дым

² fill [fɪl] — наполнять

Did you use to see the stars shining in the night?
Did you use to hear the birds and feel the sun?
Did you use to smell the flowers?
Their colours were so bright.
I used to sing a song about the beauty of the world.

LET US READ

- 23** Read the dialogue "English-speaking Countries" and say why Helen is much interested in the English language.

ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES



Diana: Hi, Helen! Haven't seen you for ages! How've you been?

Helen: Just fine, thanks, and you? It's been a long time since I saw you.

Diana: Right, it has. I last saw you in the library. You were preparing for the talk¹ on your favourite subject — English, of course.

Helen: True. But why are you laughing? I think English is the most pop-

ular language nowadays. People all over the world speak English. In Russia and France, in Germany and Italy, in Spain and Egypt people learn English as a foreign language.

Diana: I know they do. By the way, they say, that English has become the most important international language of nowadays.²

Helen: Oh, yes, it certainly has. People will understand you practically everywhere if you speak English. In most of the countries people speak English and their native language of course.

Diana: And in what countries do people use English as their native language?

Helen: In Great Britain, the USA, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. These are English-speaking countries.

¹ to prepare for the talk — готовиться к докладу

² of nowadays ['naʊədeɪz] — нашего времени

Diana: So in all these countries people speak the same language, don't they?

Helen: My answer is "yes" and "no". Though they all speak English, yet it is a little different in each of these countries.

Diana: You don't say so!¹ I never knew that Americans and the English speak different languages.

Helen: Oh, no! They don't. They speak English in both countries, but people speak American English in the USA and British English in Great Britain. Different words often name the same things.

Diana: What do you mean?

Helen: I mean that people live in *flats* in England but they live in *apartments* in America. They eat *cookies* and *candies* in the USA, but *biscuits* and *sweets* in Great Britain. Children go to school in the *fall* in America but in *autumn* in England.

Diana: That's very interesting indeed.

24 Answer the questions.

1. What English-speaking countries do you know?
2. Is English or French the most important international language nowadays?
3. What foreign languages are popular in Russia?
4. Do you know American equivalents [i'kwivələnts] for the British words "biscuits", "sweets", "autumn"?

LET US TALK

- 25** Work in pairs. Imagine that you are preparing for a test on the topic "English-speaking Countries". Ask each other questions to see what things you remember about them. Find out: a) what English-speaking countries you remember; b) in what countries the English language is popular nowadays and is used as the international language; c) if English is the same in all English-speaking countries; d) what words are used in America instead of the words "biscuits", "sweets", "autumn".
- 26** Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 23.)

¹ You don't say so! — Не может быть! Да что ты говоришь!

27 Say everything you can about the following continents:

- a) North America,
- b) Europe,
- c) Australia.

LET US WRITE

28 Do ex. 10 in writing.

29 Complete the sentences.

- While the children were running ...
- While my father was looking through the magazine
- While Ann was reading a novel ...
- ... when I saw them in the street.
- ... when the telephone rang.
- ... when Pete came back home.

10 Express the following in English.

1) Вчера в 3 часа Анна играла на флейте, а ее братья играли на скрипке. 2) В то время как Фред включал пылесос, его жена включала стиральную машину. 3) В то время как я покупала овощи, я разговаривала с продавцом овощей и фруктов. 4) Мой папа чинил центральное отопление вчера в 7 часов вечера. 5) Кто играл в теннис, когда вы вошли в зал? 6) Маленький Том смотрел на карту Европы, когда его сестра рассказывала ему об Англии. 7) Что ты делал, когда бабушка пекла блины? 8) В то время когда дети слушали музыку, их родители наблюдали за восходом солнца.

1 Make the right choice.

- 1. Moscow is in ...
 - a) Asia, b) Australia, c) Africa, d) Europe
- 2. The Australians speak ...
 - a) English, b) American, c) French, d) Australian

3. ... separate Europe from Asia.
a) The Alps, b) The Volga, c) The Urals, d) The Thames
4. ... is in Africa.
a) China, b) Vietnam, c) Egypt, d) Spain
5. The national Russian flag is
a) blue, red and white, b) blue, white and red, c) white, blue and red, d) red, white and blue
6. John is a typical ... name.
a) English, b) German, c) French, d) Spanish

32 Learn to write these words and phrases.

while, nowadays, use, both, foreign, You don't say (so)!

Listening Comprehension, ☐ 30, text "A Quickly-minded Explorer"

Home Reading Lesson 8, text "Prince Sparrow", part I

LESSON 8

LET US REVIEW

- 1** Look at the pictures and say what the boys were doing.





- 2 The police officer asks Mr Pace some questions about yesterday. Pretend you are Mr Pace and answer the officer's questions. The word combinations will help you.

Police officer: What were you doing at 9 (11, 2, 5, 7) o'clock yesterday?

to have breakfast, to watch TV, to read a newspaper,
to work in the office, to learn a foreign language

- 3 Robert was nearly two hours late for school. This is what happened.

1. 7.30. He cleaned his teeth in the bathroom. The telephone rang. It was his granny. He spoke to his granny for a few minutes.
2. He ate his breakfast. The door bell rang. It was his friend.
3. They left for school. They saw Robert's uncle from another city at the door. Robert let him in.

4. Robert showed their flat to his uncle. There was a call from his father. He explained to him why he was at home with his uncle.
5. He walked to school and saw a burglar in the house opposite. Robert spoke to the police.

Say what Robert was doing at the time mentioned in the episode.

EXAMPLE: While Robert was walking to school, he saw a burglar in the house opposite.

- 4 Your friend lives in a big city. Ask him questions about the place his house is situated in. The words will help you.

the library, the Folk Art Museum, the circus, the picture gallery, the village, the building of the art exhibition

EXAMPLE: Is your house situated near the cinema?

- 5 Read and compare.

past indefinite

- He **sold** his car yesterday.
- They **moved** into a new flat 3 weeks ago.
- Alec **fought** with his brother last Sunday.
- I **wrote** 3 letters the day before yesterday.

past continuous

- He **was selling** his car at 4 o'clock yesterday.
- I **couldn't** reach them as they **were moving** into a new flat.
- The boys **were fighting** when their father came in.
- While Nelly **was speaking** to her cousin, I **was writing** a letter.

- 6 Think of 6 sentences using:

yesterday — yesterday at 3 o'clock;
last Sunday — when the telephone rang;
3 days ago — while I was reading a magazine.

(Ex. 5 can help you.)

- 7 Say what you used to do when you were a child and what you didn't use to do. Think of not less than 6 sentences.
- 8 Do you remember how to invite people to this or that place? We hope you do. When people invite somebody to the cinema, the theatre, to have lunch, etc. they usually say:

Let's go to the park.
Let's have lunch.
How about watching a good TV show?
How about going to the circus?
I feel like going to the cinema tonight.
I feel like playing chess.
I don't feel like studying tonight, let's go for a walk.
Can you come over for my party tomorrow?
Can you come over for dinner tonight?
I'd like to take you to the Bolshoi on Wednesday.
We'd like to take you to our City Museum.

C
F

In all these cases the people you invite to different places are your friends or you know them very well. Your invitations are informal.

But if you invite people who are much older than you, who are your teachers or your friends' parents or people you don't know very well you'd better say:

I'd like to invite you to our meeting on Friday. Can you come?
We are having a party on Saturday night. Would you like to join us?

C
F

When people *accept* invitations they usually say:

I'd love to. Thanks.
I'd be glad to (come). Thank you.
OK.
All right.

That sounds good.
That sounds great.
That sounds like fun. Let's (go).
I'd like that very much.

C
F

When people *refuse* they usually say:

I'm afraid I can't.

I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't.

I wish I could but I'm afraid I can't.

Thank you for your invitation. But I can't, I'm afraid/I'm sorry.



- 9 Listen to the dialogues. 31. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

- 1) — Can you come over for dinner tonight?
— I'd like that very much. What time should I come?
— Come at 6, if you can.
— Fine.
- 2) — We are having a party tonight. I hope you can come.
— I'd love to.
- 3) — Let's have lunch today.
— OK. Where shall we meet?
— In the hall, at 12.
- 4) — I don't feel like reading now. Let's go for a walk.
— OK. Where shall we go?
— To the park, I think.
— That sounds good. I'd love to.
- 5) — I'm hungry. Let's have a bite.
— All right. Shall we buy a hamburger?
- 6) — I feel like going to a disco tonight.
— That sounds like fun. Let's go.
- 7) — I'd like to invite you to our concert. Please, can you come?
— I'd be glad to come. Thank you. What time shall I come?
— Come around 5 if you can.
- 8) — We are going to an art exhibition after classes. Would you like to join us?
— I wish I could but I'm afraid I can't. I'm really very busy.

LET US LEARN!

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Neither ... nor

I like **neither** apples **nor** oranges.
I've used **neither** water **nor** milk.
He buys **neither** fruit **nor** vegetables.
She knows **neither** geography **nor** history.
They speak **neither** English **nor** French.
We'll live **neither** in Kiev **nor** in Odessa.
Buy **neither** sugar **nor** sweets.
Neither Margaret **nor** John was there.
Neither Nelly **nor** Kate drinks coffee.
She plays **neither** football **nor** tennis.

10 Disagree.

EXAMPLE: We need both sugar and sweets.
We need **neither** sugar **nor** sweets.

1. We need both fruit and vegetables.
2. They play both the guitar and the violin.
3. The group has explored both the land and the ocean.
4. I will go to both Canada and Australia.
5. She drinks both water and coffee after lunch.
6. Yesterday both Jack and Steve ate pancakes and sour cream.
7. Ann and Jill both are fond of honey.

11 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Try and read the new words:

monkey — among	five — hide
gave — save	sleep — deep
night — high	Fred — fresh

b) Look up the words in bold type in your vocabulary.

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

among [ə'mʌŋ] (*prep*): among the flowers, among the trees.
Is your native village among the mountains? Paris is among the largest cities in the world. I like to be among friends. There was a little house among the hills. Did he divide the cake among his friends?

save [seɪv] (*v*): to save people, to save the country, to save children.

1) The firemen saved the woman from the burning house. Russian people fought to save their country. Who saved the child?

2) Save money in the bank.

high [haɪ] (*adj*): a high building, a high hill, a high mountain. That mountain is very high. The Spasskaya Tower of the Moscow Kremlin is not very high. — How high is it? — It is more than 70 metres high.

high [haɪ] (*adv*): to fly high, high in the sky, high in the mountains. The bird flew high in the sky.

hide [haɪd] (*v*): hide — hid — hidden, to hide coins, to hide money, to hide food, to hide collections. Quick! Hide yourself! Have you hidden all the pictures? Mary hides the money she saves in her wardrobe. Do you like to play hide-and-seek?

deep [di:p] (*adj*): a deep river, a deep lake, a deep sleep. The river is 3 metres deep. The snow is 6 metres deep.

deep (*adv*): deep in thought, deep in the snow, deep in the forest. The explorers went deep into the jungle [dʒʌŋɡl].

fresh [freʃ] (*adj*): fresh flowers, fresh air, fresh water, fresh meat, fresh bread. I always buy fresh vegetables. — Is there any fresh news? — No, there is not.

12 Read and compare:

A

among

1. Nick has got *many* friends.
He likes to be **among** them.

between

1. Nick has got *two* friends.
He is sitting on the sofa **between** them.

2. There are *a lot of* hills around the farm. The farm is **among** the hills.
3. I live **among** the mountains. (*more than two*)
4. Divide the sweets **among** the children. (*more than two*)

high

1. That is a **high** building



2. I see a **high** tower in front of us.



3. There are many big, **high** trees near their country house.



B

tall

1. That is a **tall** building.



2. I see a **tall** tower in front of us.



3. There are many big, **tall** trees near their country house.



4.

—

4. My father is a tall man.



- 13 Name four things that can be: *deep, high, fresh*.
- 14 Johnny is a brave fireman. He has saved many people and animals from burning houses. Say whom he has saved.

EXAMPLE: Johnny has saved an old woman.

- 15 Look at the picture and say where the mice are. How many mice have you found? (There should be nine.)



LET US READ AND LEARN

- 16 Listen to the poems,  32, and read them. Then learn the one you like best by heart.

THE WIND

(by Christina Georgina Rossetti)

Who has seen the wind?
Neither you nor I.

But when the trees bow¹ down their heads,
The wind is passing by.
Who has seen the wind?
Neither I nor you.
But when the leaves hang trembling,²
The wind is passing through.

A NAUGHTY³ PIG

Mary Middling had a pig,
Not very little and not very big,
Not very pink, not very green,
Not very dirty, not very clean,
Not very good, not very naughty,
Not very humble,⁴ not very haughty,⁵
Not very thin, not very fat,
Now what would you give for a pig like that?

LET US READ

- 7 a) We are sure you like animals. Read the text and say why some of them are in danger.

ANIMALS IN DANGER

People have lived on our planet for many years. They lived and live on different continents in different countries. People depend on their planet, on the sun, on animals and plants around them. Today let's read and speak about some animals on our planet the Earth.

33. Many animals and birds on the Earth are disappearing. Many of them are in danger. Indian tigers and African ele-

to bow [baʊ] — нагибать, склонять

but when the leaves hang trembling — когда колеблется листья

naughty ['naɪtɪ] — непослушный, капризный

humble ['hʌmbəl] — скромный, смиренный

haughty ['haɪtɪ] — надменный, высокомерный



phants are among them. People have hunted and killed many tigers in India and a lot of elephants in Africa. Why?

Tigers and elephants are often dangerous animals. Tigers can kill cows, sheep, other domestic animals and sometimes they can also kill men. Some people are afraid of tigers and kill them to save their domestic animals and their lives. But some people have often hunted tigers for fun and for their beautiful skin.¹ They can easily sell the skin and get a lot of money as the prices² are high.

The result is very sad. There are few Indian tigers left on the Earth now. Many of them are old, sick animals. Most tigers don't hunt people nowadays, but hide from them in deep, dark forests. Or they rather hid there earlier, because there aren't many forests for tigers nowadays. People have cut³ down many trees. And the question is: "Have those animals got a future?" ☐

We can ask the same question about African elephants. They are wonderful animals. They can help men. In the 19th century Africa was full of elephants. But these days there are not many of them except in African parks.

This is the sad story of Indian tigers and African elephants. But many less dangerous wild animals and birds are also disappearing from the Earth. Modern life is bad for them. The air is not fresh. The water is not clean. They don't often have good things to eat and space to live. You can find their names in the Red Book. You can find the names of some fish there too.

People must take special care of them all.

¹ skin [skɪn] — шкура

² price [praɪs] — цена

³ cut [kʌt] (cut; cut) — резать, рубить; cut down — срубать

We must save wild animals.

We must find the right balance [bə'leɪns] between land, people and animals.

We must take care of nature.

- b) Listen to the text, ex. 33, and say why people have hunted and killed many tigers in India.

18 Answer the questions.

1. What does the life of the people on Earth depend on?
2. Why are some animals and birds disappearing nowadays?
3. Can elephants be useful?
What can they do for man?
4. Are only Indian tigers and African elephants in danger nowadays?
5. Why are other animals also in danger?
6. Why can you find the names of some animals, birds and fish in the Red Book?
7. What must people do to save the wild animals?

LET US TALK

- 19 Choose a partner and talk to him/her about the animals in danger.
- 20 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 17.)
- 21 Tell your classmates about "the animals in danger" in this country.
- 22 What could you do to help animals and birds?

LET US WRITE

- 23 Do ex. 6 in writing.
- 24 Do you know any stories (facts) about an animal or a bird in danger? Then write 5-6 sentences about it.

25 Complete the dialogues.

- 1) —
— I'd love to. When should I come?
—
- 2) —
— I wish I could but I'm afraid I can't. I'm leaving for London tomorrow.
- 3) — We are having a party on Friday night. Can you come?
—
- 4) — I don't feel like watching TV tonight. ...
—
- 5) — Can you come over for dinner on Wednesday?
—
- 6) —
— OK. Where shall we meet?
—

26 Express the following in English.

1) Я не люблю ни хоккей, ни футбол. 2) Среди этих цветов нет ни желтых, ни голубых. 3) Они не смогли спасти ни животных, ни птиц. 4) Она не прятала ни значки, ни монеты. 5) В магазине не было ни свежего мяса, ни свежей рыбы. 6) Ни он, ни я не можем экономить деньги.

27 Make the right choice.

- He never goes ... in the forest.
a) fresh, b) deep, c) high, d) wide
- There is always ... air in the forest.
a) fresh, b) deep, c) high, d) tall
- She is a ... girl.
a) high, b) tall, c) fresh, d) long
- They always bring ... flowers to the Monument of the Unknown Soldier.
a) deep, b) fresh, c) long, d) high
- There was a ... tower not far from the bridge.
a) deep, b) long, c) fresh, d) high

28 Open the brackets to complete the sentences.

1. Paul (*watch*) TV when his mother (*come*) into the room.
2. Michael (*drink*) coffee while he (*read*) the newspaper.
3. Don (*write*) a letter at 5 o'clock yesterday.
4. Ken (*use*) to prepare breakfast early in the morning.
5. Don and Kim (*talk*) while they (*play*) chess.
6. Last Sunday Patty and her younger brother (*drive*) to the seaside for the weekend.

29 Learn to write these words.

among, to save, high, to hide (hid, hidden), deep, fresh

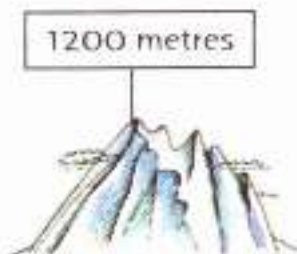
Listening Comprehension, 34, text "The Day I Came Face to Face with a Tiger"

Home Reading Lesson 9, text "Prince Sparrow", part II

LESSON 9

LET US REVIEW

1 Look at the pictures and say how deep (high) they are.





- 2 Arrange the words into two groups (verb, adjective).

Separate, national, save, high, deep, use, hide, fresh, curious, explore, set, rise, continue, foreign.

- 3 Say where you've hidden the things.

EXAMPLE: I've hidden your pen under the book.

- 4 Work in pairs. Say what can be *fresh*, *deep*, *high*. Use these combinations of words in the sentences of your own.

EXAMPLE: P₁: Fresh air.

P₂: The air is usually fresh after rain.

- 5 There was a big fire in Green Street. But the firemen have saved a lot of people and animals. Whom have they saved?

EXAMPLE: The firemen have saved an old man.

- 6 Name 6-7 cities which are among the largest cities in the world.

EXAMPLE: Delhi is among the largest cities in the world.

- 7 Look at the pictures. Choose a partner and make a short dialogue about each picture.

EXAMPLE: P₁: What were (was) you (he/she) doing at ...?

P₂: I (we ...) was (were)





8 Complete the sentences to compare them.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Paul never (<i>use</i>) his brother's car when they lived in the country. 2. The firemen (<i>save</i>) 5 children the other day. 3. Yesterday Nick (<i>hide</i>) his mother's bag and nobody could find it. 4. Nick's uncle (<i>explore</i>) a small island in the Pacific Ocean when he was young. 5. He (<i>rise</i>) from the chair to say "Hello!" | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When Paul was returning home he (<i>use</i>) his brother's car. 2. The hotel was on fire and the firemen (<i>save</i>) the people who were in it. 3. Yesterday at 5 o'clock Nick was in the garden. He (<i>hide</i>) his mother's bag. 4. While Nick's uncle (<i>explore</i>) new lands, his wife was writing articles about his trips. 5. When we were on the bank of the river the sun (<i>rise</i>). |
|---|--|

9 Accept the invitation.

1. Would you like to join us for a game of basketball?
2. Can you come for tea at 5 o'clock tomorrow?

3. I'd like to invite you to our school play. Will you come?
4. Let's have dinner tonight.
5. I feel like going to the theatre tonight.

10 Refuse the invitation.

1. Would you like to join me for a cup of coffee?
2. We are having a conference in a week's time. At 12 o'clock on Tuesday. Will you come?
3. I don't feel like staying in. Let's go for a walk.
4. Let me take you to our local museum.
5. I'd like to invite you to our school. We are having a quiz. Do you know?

11 We hope you remember the way people thank each other. If not, look at the list of examples below.

Thank you.	Thanks a lot for everything.	
Thank you so much.	Thanks for your help.	
Thank you ever so much.	That was kind of you.	
Thanks a lot.	That was very kind of you.	
Thanks again.	That was awfully ¹ kind of you.	
Thanks. That is just what I wanted.		

When you receive thanks you usually answer:

You're welcome.	Glad that I could help.	
It was my pleasure.	Glad that I could do it.	
My pleasure. It was nothing.	Anytime.	
I'm glad I could help.	I was happy to do it.	

12 Listen to the dialogues, 35. Read and learn them by heart and then act them out.

- 1) — Oh, Mary. You've done so much for me. Thanks a lot for everything.
— It was my pleasure, Bill. Glad that I could help.

¹ awfully ['ɔːfʊli] — ужасно

- 2) — Thank you for your help. That was very kind of you.
— My pleasure. It was nothing.
- 3) — Thank you, officer. Now I understand where to go and how to find the underground station.
— Anytime, sir.
- 4) — Thanks again. It was awfully kind of you.
— You're welcome.
- 5) — Thanks a lot. That is just what I wanted.
— You're welcome. I was happy to buy it for you.

3 Look at the pictures and say what Nelly doesn't like.

EXAMPLE: Nelly likes neither potatoes nor carrots.



LET US LEARN!

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Passive Voice

The passive voice is used when we don't know *who* did something or it is not important who did it.

to be + V₃/Ved

Present Indefinite Passive

+

The table is **made** of wood.

The book is **sold** everywhere.

A lot of houses are **built** in the city every year.

-

Rice is **not** grown in England.

Meat is **not** usually eaten for breakfast in England.

Those newspapers are **not** sold here.

?

Are the best cameras **made** in Japan?

Is English **spoken** all over the world?

Is coffee **grown** in Russia?

wh?

Where is French **spoken**?

When are the newspapers **brought** to you?

What is usually **eaten** for lunch in your family?

- 14 Say what buildings are usually built in big cities.

EXAMPLE: Railway stations are usually built in big cities.

theatres

bridges

houses

cinemas

schools

hospitals

shops

banks

airports

- 15 Say what languages are spoken in Russia, England, France, Germany, China, Australia, Canada and some other countries.

EXAMPLE: Russian is spoken in Russia.

- 16 Say what is usually bought when the weather is hot.

EXAMPLE: Cold drinks are bought when the weather is hot.

- 17 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

lily ['lɪli]

emblem ['embələm]

chrysanthemum [kri'sæntθɪməm]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

purple

smell

pleasant

to climb

daffodil

honeysuckle

daisy

poppy

snowdrop

primrose

blossom

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

purple ['pɜ:pəl] (*adj*): a purple flower, a purple blouse. Purple is my favourite colour. Red and blue together will make purple.

smell [smel] (*n*): a sweet smell, a nice smell, a strong smell, the smell of the sea. I don't like the smell of these flowers.

to smell (*v*): smell — smelt (smelled) — smelt (smelled); I think I smell roses here. I don't smell anything. It smells good. The flowers smelt fantastic! Did those flowers smell sweet?

pleasant ['plezənt] (*adj*): a pleasant afternoon, a pleasant voice, a flower with a pleasant smell, a pleasant smile. She is a pleasant woman. It's quite pleasant today, though the wind is rather strong. The rose is a flower with a pleasant smell. He is not a pleasant man, is he?

emblem ['embələm] (*n*): an emblem of peace, an emblem of

independence. A country's flag is an emblem of the nation.
Is the national emblem of England a rose?

climb [klaɪm] (v): 1. 'To climb' usually means to go up by using both the hands and the feet; to climb a tree. Monkeys climb well.

2. to climb a mountain (the stairs). The old lady climbs the stairs with difficulty. Do you think you can climb that tree?

daffodil ['dæfədɪl] (n), daffodils: a field of daffodils. The daffodil is a plant that has long leaves and yellow or white flowers. My aunt likes daffodils very much but my uncle doesn't.

lily ['lɪlɪ] (n), lilies: The lily has a large flower. She doesn't like lilies. The water lily grows in the water. Do lilies smell nice?

chrysanthemum [krɪ'sæŋθɪməm] ("mum") (n): The chrysanthemum is an autumn flower. Are you fond of autumn chrysanthemums? My granny doesn't grow chrysanthemums in her garden.

honeysuckle ['hʌnɪsʌkl] (n): The honeysuckle is a climbing plant that has many small, sweet-smelling flowers.

daisy ['deɪzɪ] (n), daisies: The daisy is a very common small flower. The daisy is a flower with pink, white or yellow petals¹ around a yellow centre.

poppy ['pɒpi] (n), poppies: The poppy is a plant with round, red or yellow flowers. Is the poppy your favourite flower? In spring I always go to the mountains where poppies grow.

snowdrop ['snəʊdrɒp] (n), snowdrops: The snowdrop is an early spring flower. I think it is the first flower we can see at the end of winter.

primrose ['prɪmrəʊz] (n), primroses: Have you ever seen primroses? Are primroses autumn or spring flowers?

blossom ['blɒsəm] (n): 'Blossom' is the flowers of a tree, especially of a fruit tree. Apple blossoms, in blossom, to be in blossom. I like my garden when all the trees are in blossom.

¹ petal ['petl] — лепесток

- 18 Look at the pictures and **a)** name the flowers; **b)** say which of them smell pleasant or don't smell at all; **c)** which of them you like or dislike; **d)** name spring, summer and autumn flowers.



- 19 Say what can be purple.

EXAMPLE: A blouse can be purple.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER !

feel/feels
N + smell/smells + Adj
taste/tastes
sound/sounds

The boy feels **bad**.
The rose smells **pleasant**.

The cake tastes **sweet**.
The song sounds **sad**.

20 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

a) The old woman	smell	pleasant.
The red flowers	feels	salty.
The apples	tastes	lovely.
The little girl	sound	fantastic.
The purple flowers	feel	sad.
The meat	sounds	sweet.
The song	smells	nice.
The melody	taste	bad.

b) The apple trees	are	in blossom	in May.
The fruit trees	were		in spring.
			in April.
			in June.

LET US READ AND LEARN

21 Listen to the poem "Flowers" and read it,  36. Then learn it by heart.

FLOWERS

I like flowers that are bright,
I like flowers that are white.
I like flowers with a nice smell,
That blossom in gardens so well.

LET US READ

22 Read the text and name the flowers for autumn months. What is interesting about them?

TWELVE FLOWERS OF THE YEAR

My granny likes nature very much. She has lived in a small village all her life. She knows a lot about different plants. My granny says that there is a special flower for each month of

the year. She often tells me about these flowers and she also shows them to me as they are all in her garden collection. This is what she says.

The snowdrop is the flower for January. It is as white as snow, and appears in forests and gardens when there is still snow there. The little plant is a native flower of Europe.

February's flower is the primrose. Primroses can be white, yellow, red, pink, rose, purple and orange. The flowers look like stars.

The primrose is one of the earliest spring flowers. They grow wild in some countries in Europe, and North America, but you can find lots of them in China.



snowdrop



primrose



daffodil

The flower of the month of March is the daffodil. It appears very early in spring too. The flowers are usually yellow. The plant has long leaves and a sweet pleasant smell. It has been a favourite flower in many gardens.

April's flowers are daisies. You can see them everywhere in the fields, gardens and even roadsides.

The flower for May is the hawthorn.¹ It grows on a small tree and its blossoms are pink, white or red. The hawthorn also has small hard fruit which looks like a little apple. June's flower is the honeysuckle.

¹ hawthorn [hæθɔ:n] — боярышник



daisies



hawthorn



honeysuckle

July's flowers are water lilies. You can often see them on the waters of a quiet lake. Frogs like to use their large green leaves as platforms. Some water lilies are deep yellow in colour and some are white, pink, blue or even purple.

The flower for August is the poppy. Poppies have bright red, orange, purple or yellow flowers. They look like cups. They often grow wild in the mountains and in the fields.



water lily



poppy



morning glory

The morning glory,¹ September's flower is a climbing plant with blue or purple flowers. Their green leaves look like small

¹ morning glory [ˈmɔːnɪŋ ˈɡlɔːri] — вьюнок

green hearts. The morning glory opens early in the morning, but when the hot sun appears in the sky it closes. The blossoms are like bells. The morning glory has a sweet smell and can grow wild.

October's flower is the hop.¹ People use it to make beer.² It is a climbing plant which often decorates country houses.

The flower for November is the chrysanthemum. It is one of the oldest known flowers. It has been grown in Japan for nearly two thousand years and is the national flower and the emblem of that island country. This lovely flower can be white, yellow, red, purple or pink. Chrysanthemums appear from late August to December when most other flowers have stopped flowering ready for the winter.



hop



chrysanthemum



holly

December's plant is the holly.³ Its flowers have produced red berries for the Christmas season. The holly has prickly⁴ green leaves. It is an evergreen.⁵

¹ hop [hɒp] — хмель

² beer [biə] — пиво

³ holly ['hɒli] — остролист

⁴ prickly ['prɪkli] — колючий

⁵ evergreen ['evəɡrɪn] — вечнозеленое растение

- 23 Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and read the names of the flowers for each month.

EXAMPLE: P₁: May.
P₂: Hawthorn.

- 24 What flowers are they?

- 1) the national flower of Japan;
- 2) the plant of the Christmas season;
- 3) the earliest spring flower;
- 4) the flower that you can see on the surface of a lake;
- 5) the flower that never closes when the sun is in the sky.

LET US TALK

- 25 We are sure you like flowers. Choose any flower for any month you like and say everything you know about it.

- 26 Think of any flower mentioned in the text and let your classmates guess it asking questions.

EXAMPLE: Is it a spring flower?
What colour can it be? etc.

- 27 Do you think flowers are in danger nowadays? Try and prove it.

LET US WRITE

- 28 Do ex. 7 and ex. 8 in writing.

- 29 Match the words. Write the sentences with these combinations of words.

pleasant	river
fresh	flower
purple	smell
deep	air

30 Write the synonyms to the words:

nice, tall, small, big, hard, too, tell, blossom.

31 Write the following in English.

1) Кофе выращивают в Южной Америке. 2) Масло делают из молока. 3) Новые дома строят во всех больших городах. 4) Комнату убирают каждый день. 5) Яблоки и апельсины покупают в магазинах.

32 Learn to write these words.

purple, smell, pleasant, emblem, to climb, daffodil, lily, chrysanthemum, honeysuckle, daisy, poppy, snowdrop, primrose, blossom, to be in blossom

Listening Comprehension, pp 37, text "Two Trips"

Home Reading Lesson 10, text "We've Hit Land"

LESSON 10

LET US REVIEW

1 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

It's very pleasant to be in the country	when	fruit trees are in blossom. birds come back, flowers smell sweet in the fields. the sun is high up in the sky. it doesn't rain. it doesn't snow. it is not windy.
--	------	--

- 2 Look at the pictures and say what things are purple.



- 3 Look, read and compare.

What a/an ...!

What a pleasant face!
What a deep lake!
What an easy text!
What an interesting film!

What ...!

What fresh air!
What deep snow!
What high hills!
What dangerous snakes!

- 4 You like some things. Express your feelings using the example.

EXAMPLE: What fresh fruit!
What an expensive car!

- 5 Ask questions for more information.

a) Rick went to Spain; b) Ann has been to Washington DC.

- 6 Give Nelly's answers to Caroline's questions and statements.

Caroline: Hello, Nelly. What an interesting book I've just read.

Nelly:

Caroline: It is about flowers. Do you know that there is a special flower for each month?

Nelly: No,

Caroline: Oh. It's the primrose. Do you know anything special about these flowers?

Nelly: Yes,

Caroline: And when were you born? I wonder what flower is for the month of your birthday

Nelly:

Caroline: Oh, then it's

7 Now pretend that one of you is Caroline and the other is Nelly. Act out the conversation. Don't forget to change over.

8 Think of five more questions that Caroline (or Nelly) could ask.

9 Disagree and correct the statements.

EXAMPLE: Coffee is grown in Scotland.
Coffee is not grown in Scotland, it is grown in Brazil.

1. Coca-cola is enjoyed only in China.
2. Cheese is made from water.
3. Meat is bought in museums.
4. Flowers are always grown in villages.
5. Zoos are never visited in winter.
6. Pictures are never stolen from museums.

0 Make up true sentences using passive voice.

EXAMPLE: The rooms/clean/every day.
The rooms are cleaned every day.
or
The rooms are not cleaned every day.

1. Stamps/sell/in post offices.
2. Churches/build/everywhere nowadays.
3. This thing/use/very often.
4. English/speak/in Africa.
5. Many languages/speak/in India.
6. Many American programmes/show/on Russian television nowadays.

11 Express your doubt.

EXAMPLE: Newspapers are brought in the morning.
Are newspapers really brought in the morning?

1. A rose is known as the emblem of England.
2. Songs are sung in music classes.
3. Cars are sold in special shops.
4. Football is played all over the world.
5. Breakfast is cooked in the morning.

12 We are sure you know now how to invite people to lunch or dinner. But do you remember how to talk at table? Look at the list below.

What would you like to have?
Which vegetables are you going to have?
What kind of salad would you like?
What are you going to have for dessert?¹
How would you like your eggs?
How do you want your coffee?
Please pass the salt.
Could you pass the sugar, please?

C
F

The usual answers to these are:

I think I'll have potatoes.	I'd like my coffee black.
I think I'll have the same.	Here you are.
I haven't decided yet.	Here it is.
I'd like soft-boiled eggs. ²	That sounds great!

C
F

13 Listen to the dialogues, 38. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

- 1) — How do you like your coffee? Would you like it black or white?
— White coffee, please.

¹ for dessert [fə dɪ'zɜ:t] — на десерт

² soft-boiled eggs — яйца всмятку

- How many lumps¹ of sugar?
- No sugar, thank you.
- 2) — What would you like for breakfast? Would you like eggs?
- Certainly. I like eggs very much.
- How would you like them soft-boiled or hard-boiled?²
- Soft-boiled, please.
- 3) — Could you pass the butter, please?
- Yes, here you are. What about cheese?
- No cheese, thank you.
- 4) — What are you going to have for dessert?
- Ice cream, please.
- Chocolate [ˈtʃɒklɪt] or vanilla [vəˈnɪlə]?
- Vanilla ice cream for me, please.
- Here you are.
- Thank you.
- 5) — What would you like for dinner tonight?
- I haven't decided yet. What would *you* like?
- Tomato soup, turkey or chicken.
- That sounds great. I think I'll have the same.

LET US LEARN

14 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess the meaning of the words:

climate [ˈklaɪmɪt], protect [prəˈtɛkt]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

mild	factory	breathe
possible	impossible	harm

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

mild [maɪld] (*adj*): mild — milder — (the) mildest, mild weather, a mild answer, mild cheese. A mild winter is

¹ a lump [lʌmp] — кусочек (сахара)

² hard-boiled eggs — яйца вкрутую

- not very cold and snowy. Mild cheese does not have a strong taste. He has too mild a nature to get angry.
- climate** ['klaɪmɪt] (*n*): a dry climate, a mild climate. The doctor told him to spend the winter in South Africa or some other warm climate.
- possible** ['pɒsɪbl] (*adj*): a possible answer, a possible question, a possible place, a possible time. It is possible to do it today. It is not possible to be in two places at the same time. Come as soon as possible.
- impossible** [ɪm'pɒsɪbl] (*adj*): an impossible person, an impossible visit, an impossible story. It is impossible for me to get there by ten o'clock.
- factory** ['fæktəri] (*n*): a factory — factories, a small factory, a chocolate factory. People make sweets in factories. My mother works at a factory.
- breathe** [bri:ð] (*v*): to breathe — breathed, to breathe hard, to breathe through the mouth, to breathe deeply. Breathe in! Breathe out! We breathe air. He was breathing hard when he finished his run.
- protect** [prə'tekt] (*v*): to protect — protected, to protect children. We wear coats to protect us from the cold. People must protect nature.
- harm** [hɑ:m] (*n*): a lot of harm, to do harm. He did me no harm. There is no harm in his words. It won't do you any harm to spend more time outdoors.

- 15** Say what or who(m) people must protect. The words below can help you.

Indian tigers, African elephants, animals, Lake Baikal, nature, little children, dolphins ['dɒlfɪnz], plants, fish, water

- 16** Say what is possible (impossible) for you and your friends to do this week.

EXAMPLE: It is possible to finish reading the book today. It is impossible for you to go to the cinema on Monday. You haven't prepared your talk yet.

- 17 Say in what countries and on what continents the climate is (is not) mild.

Note. The climate is mild if winters are not cold and there is little snow.

- 18 Ask your classmates not to do certain things. Explain why.

EXAMPLE: Don't read when it is dark. It will do you a lot of harm.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Past Indefinite Passive

was/were + Ved/V₃

+

The room **was cleaned** yesterday.

The houses **were built** 500 years ago.

America **was discovered** in 1492.

—

The room **was not cleaned** last night.

The Houses of Parliament **were not built** in the 20th century.

This radio-set **was not bought** in 1948, it was bought later.

?

Was the book **sold** last week?

Were the churches **built** last century?

wh?

When **were** the oranges **bought**?

Where **were** the cartoons **shown**?

What **was sent** to your granny, a letter or a telegram?

- 19 Look at the pictures and say when all these things were done.

EXAMPLE: The letter was written at 10 o'clock in the morning.



LET US READ AND LEARN

- 20 Listen to the song "Don't Kill the World", pp. 39.

DON'T KILL THE WORLD

Don't kill the world!
Don't let the Earth down!

Do not destroy¹ the ground!
Don't kill the world!

Don't kill the world!
Don't let the Earth die!
Help her to survive!²
Don't kill the world!

LET US READ

- 21 Try and guess what the words mean:

temperature [ˈtemprətʃə], activity [ækˈtɪvɪti], drinkable [ˈdrɪŋkəbl] (drink + able), freshwater [ˈfreʃwɔ:tə] (fresh + water), problem [ˈprɒbləm]

- 22 Read the text and say why the Earth is in danger.

THE EARTH IS IN DANGER

April 22 is Earth Day. People all over the world think about our planet. They think about air, water, plants and animals on the Earth. They say our planet is in danger. Many people do



¹ destroy [dɪˈstrɔɪ] — разрушать

² survive [saˈvaɪv] — выживать

not know how to protect wild animals and plants, how to keep water clean and the air fresh. But they are ready to do it. They try and help nature.

Water is very important for life on Earth. It is in our oceans, seas, rivers and lakes. There is a lot of water on our planet and at the same time there is little water on it. This is because very little water on Earth is good for drinking. In many rivers and lakes the water is very dirty. Sometimes people cannot swim even in the sea because the sea and the seaside are not clean. In many places the water is not drinkable and it is dangerous to use it when you cook. Even fish die in such water.

For example Lake Baikal is the deepest freshwater lake on Earth. It is 1741 metres deep. The lake is very beautiful but now it is in great danger, because of the factories which are near it. In some places the water in the lake is so dirty that it kills the animals and plants in Baikal and around it.

The way people live has changed the climate on our planet. Nowadays the temperature is rising. You do not have real Russian winter in Moscow any more. In the north of Europe the climate has become milder and warmer too.

If the temperature grows by 3-4 degrees¹ it will become more difficult to live on the planet.



Some people's activities do a lot of harm to the forests. People cut down trees to build farms, homes and roads. Many animals and plants lose their homes. This is bad for the Earth's air too. Modern plants² and factories send a lot of smoke into

¹ degree [di'grɪ] — градус

² plant [plɑnt] — завод

the atmosphere. This is also very bad, because nowadays it's difficult to breathe in big cities.

So, the problem now is to protect life on Earth, and to save our planet for the future.

23 'True' or 'False'.

1. April 22 is Earth Day.
2. People all over the world don't think about our planet.
3. People know how to protect wild animals and plants.
4. People don't want to help nature.
5. Water is not important for life on Earth.
6. There is a lot of good clean water on our planet.
7. Lake Baikal is not in danger now.
8. Life on Earth depends on the temperature.
9. Some people do a lot of harm to the forests.
10. People must protect life on Earth.

24 Divide the text into parts and give a name to each of them.

LET US TALK

- 25** Choose a partner and talk to him/her about the text "The Earth Is in Danger".
- 26** Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 22.)

LET US WRITE

- 27** Do ex. 10, ex. 19 in writing.
- 28** Write 10 questions on the text (ex. 22).
- 29** Express the following in English.

1) Эти дома были построены в прошлом году. 2) В нашей стране строят много новых домов. 3) Масло было куплено вчера. 4) Масло покупают в этом магазине.

5) Сыр делают из молока. 6) Этот суп был сварен (сделан) вчера вечером.

30 Learn to write these words.

mild, climate, possible, impossible, factory, to breathe (breathed), to protect (protected), harm, to do a lot of harm

Listening Comprehension, ☐ 40, text "Bobby's Answer"
Home Reading Lesson 11, text "The Bald Eagle"

LESSON 11

Review 1

LET US TALK

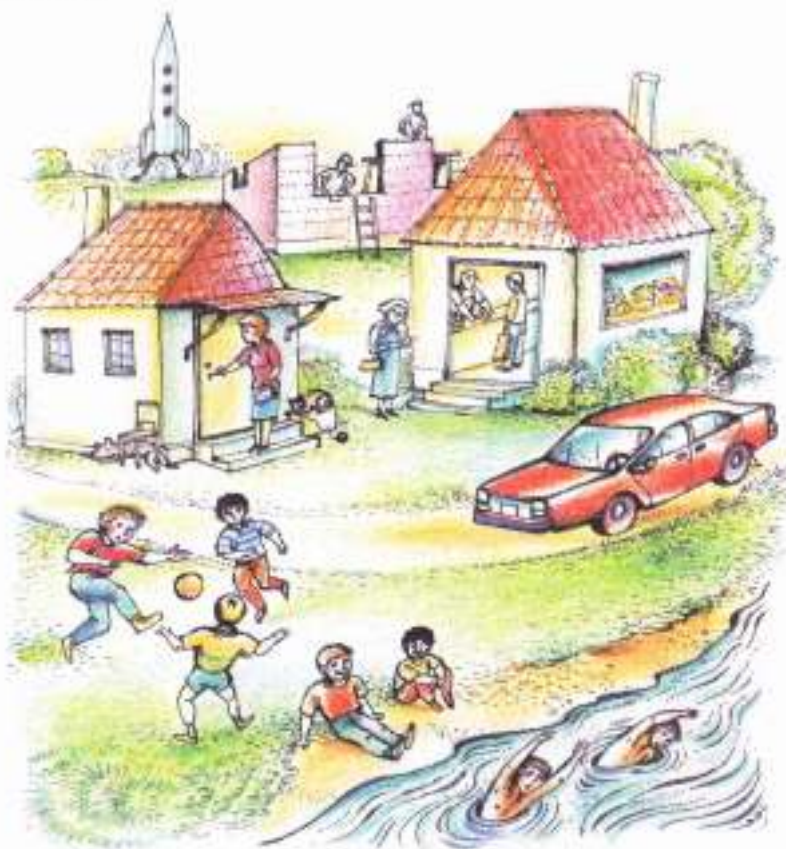
1 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

The orange	smell/smells	nice.
The flowers	taste/tastes	pleasant.
The birds	feel/feels	bad.
The blossoms	sound/sounds	fresh.
The river		well.
The birds' songs		sweet.
The boys		wonderful.
The man		
The apple		
The music		

2 Describe the village you have been to in summer, spring, autumn or winter. Don't forget to use the following words:

village, breathe, air, fresh, pleasant, to do a lot of good, smell, to be in blossom, purple, climate, mild, high, deep, hide, separate, to be situated

- 3 Look at the picture and say what the people were doing when the space-ship landed.



- 4 Peter has broken¹ his leg. Say what is possible (impossible) for him to do. The words can help you.

EXAMPLE: It's impossible for him to run.

read, dance, sing, play chess, play the piano, play football, swim, listen to the radio

- 5 Say how people can protect plants, animals and birds when they are in danger.

¹ break [breɪk] (broke; broken) — ломать

- 6 What do you know about Lake Baikal? Why is its water dangerous for fish and even people now?
- 7 Work in pairs. Read the questions. Answer them.
1. When was Moscow founded?
 2. When was America discovered?
 3. What are tables usually made of?
 4. Where is coffee grown?
 5. Where are books sold?
 6. What is usually cooked for breakfast in your family (in England)?
- 8 People often do a lot of harm to nature. Can you tell your classmates some facts about it? What must people do to save plants, birds and animals?

LET US READ

- 9 Choose and read aloud as quickly as you can the words on the topic "The Earth Is in Danger".

Theatre, book, school, lamp, bell, breathe, protect, save, kill, to do a lot of harm, kitchen, factory, cinema, climate, in blossom, temperature, car, smell.

- 10 Have you ever read any old tales? This is one of them. Read it and say why the hungry lion didn't eat Androcles ['ændrəʊklɪz].

ANDROCLES AND THE LION

Androcles was a slave.¹ He ran through the forest. He wanted to hide among high trees. He wanted to run far from the village where he lived and was a slave. He thought his life was very hard, in fact it was impossible. Androcles wanted to save his life in the forest. Suddenly he saw a big lion. Nobody else was seen near him. Androcles became afraid but understood that the lion couldn't do him any harm. The lion was breath-

¹ slave [slɛv] — паф



ng hard. He wanted to show Androcles that something was wrong with his paw.¹ The lion couldn't speak the language of people but he wanted to say: "Save me! Protect me! Help me!"

Androcles looked at the lion's paw and discovered a large horn² in it. It was hidden deep in the paw. Androcles took it away. The lion was happy. They became friends and the lion brought him food every day.

But one day the Emperor's³ people caught both Androcles and his friend the lion.

They brought them to Rome and separated them. They didn't give any food to the lion. He became very hungry and then they gave him Androcles to eat. But the lion was his real friend. He didn't kill Androcles. He was happy to see his friend.



¹ paw [pɔ:] — лапа

² thorn [θɔ:n] — колючка, шип

³ emperor [em'perə:] — император

The Emperor couldn't understand it. Androcles was brought to him and he told the Emperor his story. The Emperor gave food to the lion and let them both go away.

- 11 Find and read the sentences which describe the pictures.
- 12 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer.
- 13 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 10.)

LET US WRITE

- 14 Write not less than 10 questions on the text.
- 15 Do you know any tale? Write it down in a few sentences.



THE GEOGRAPHY AND POLITICAL OUTLOOK OF THE UK

LESSON 12

LET US REVIEW

1 Say:

- a) what you used [ju:st] to do last summer;
- b) what things you used [ju:zd] yesterday:
 - to cook dinner;
 - to write a letter;
 - to prepare a talk on the History of the USA;
 - to make a picture.

EXAMPLE: 1) I used to swim a lot last summer.
2) I used meat to cook dinner.

2 Work in pairs and talk about what you were doing at different time yesterday. Don't forget to change over.

EXAMPLE: P₁: What were you doing at 1 o'clock yesterday?
P₂: I was having lunch.

3 Complete the text (using the present or the past passive) and read it to your classmates.

England (*separate*) from Scotland by mountains. It (*wash*) by the North Sea. The main cities of England (*situate*) in the centre of the country. London, its capital, (*found*) many centuries ago. It used to be a port too. A lot of goods¹

¹ goods [gu:dz] — тоннажи

(bring) to London from many countries now. Many different things (sell) in the shops and streets of London. London (visit) by many tourists every year.

- 4 Pretend you are a teacher, read the questions for your classmates to answer. The words below can help them.

EXAMPLE: — Why have you bought these daffodils?
— They smelled so nice!

to sound loud, to smell nice, to smell pleasant, to taste sweet, to taste good, to feel bad, to feel well

1. Why did you turn off the radio?
2. Why have you eaten the whole cake?
3. Why didn't you go to school yesterday?
4. Why have you put these lilies here?
5. Why do you like honey?
6. Why don't you take aspirin ['æsprɪn]?

- 5 We are sure you know how to say that you like or dislike something. Look at the list below.

I like it.	I really like it very much.
I like it very much.	I love it.
I like it a lot.	

C
F

Don't forget it in such sentences:

I like <u>it</u> when it rains.	
I like <u>it</u> when it's warm outdoors.	
I like <u>it</u> when my mother reads to me.	

C
F

This is how you can ask for a person's opinion.

Do you like it?	Is this OK?
Do you really like it?	Is this all right?
How do you like it?	

C
F

This is the way to say that you don't like this or that.

I don't like it.	I don't like it a bit.
I don't like it at all.	I can't stand it. ¹



6 Listen to the dialogues, [41]. Read and learn them by heart and then act them out.

- 1) — Do you like it when it rains?
— Yes, I do. I like rainy weather.
— Do you really like it?
— Of course I do. It's my favourite weather.
- 2) — How much do you like it?
— I like it very much. It's really very good.
— Do you like the colour?
— Oh, yes, I do. I love it.
- 3) — Do you like it?
— I am afraid I don't like it.
— Not a bit?
— Not a bit.
— Not at all?
— Not at all. I hate it. I can't stand it.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Who is at home now?
Who **has** the dog?
Who **went** there last night?
Who **can** speak Chinese?

My parents **are**.
Nick **has**. (I **have**.)
We all **did**.
Nobody here **can**.

But:

Which of you is Ann?

She is. (I am.)

¹ I can't stand it. — Не выношу этого.

Which of you knows French?

We all do. (He does.)

Which of you has a pet?

Boris and Peter have.

Which of you went to the museum after classes?

They did.

Which of you has bought the magazine?

I have.

7 Answer the questions.

1. Who discovered America?
2. Who has turned off the washing machine?
3. Which of you is Susan?
4. Which of them works at the factory?
5. Which of the flowers smells nice?

8 Express the following in English.

1) Кто защищает животных на нашей планете? — Люди. 2) Кто из вас поедет в Лондон? — Мы. 3) Кто из них продолжит эту работу? — Петр и Анна. 4) Кто покупает газеты в вашей семье? — Мой папа. 5) Кто из вас выращивал примулы в саду прошлым летом? — Мои сестры. 6) Что встает на востоке? — Солнце.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Reported Speech

+

Nick says: "I like my granny very much."

Nick says (that) he likes *his* granny very much.

Nelly says: "I wrote a letter to my parents the other day."

Nelly says (that) she wrote a letter to *her* parents the other day.

The Browns say: "We've moved into a new flat. Our flat is large."

The Browns **say** (that) they **have moved into** a new flat.
Their flat is large.

—

The brothers **say**: "We **won't clean** our flat now. We'll do it later."

The brothers **say** (that) they **won't clean** *their* flat now, they will do it later.

+ / !

Nick **says**: "Betty, **give me some bread, please!**"

Nick **asks** Betty **to give** him some bread.

Nick **tells** Betty **to give** him some bread.

The teacher **says**: "**Learn** this poem by heart!"

The teacher **asks** the pupils **to learn** this poem by heart.

The teacher **tells** the pupils **to learn** this poem by heart.

- / !

Mother **says**: "**Don't open** the window! It is cold in here."

Mother **asks** me **not to open** the window because it is cold in here.

My aunt **says** to me: "**Don't go** there!"

My aunt **asks** me **not to go** there.

My aunt **tells** me **not to go** there.

- 9 Put the following sentences into reported speech. Make all the necessary changes.

EXAMPLE: Helen **says**: "Don't come back late, Susan!"

Helen **tells** Susan **not to come back** late.

1. The people **say**: "Many animals are in danger."
2. Nick's granny **says**: "Don't do any harm to the chrysanthemums, Nick!"

3. The teacher says: "Don't speak so loudly, Betty!"
4. My grandpa says: "I like spring when all the fruit trees are in blossom."
5. Bob's cousin shouts to him: "Come here! Be quick."
6. My teacher says: "Speak English in class, boys."

10 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

industry ['ɪndəstri], industrial [ɪn'dʌstriəl], official [ə'fɪʃəl], careful ['keəfəl] (care + ful), carefully

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

kingdom	saint
consist (of)	to be surprised
as well	especially
state	lonely
sign	

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words:

kingdom ['kɪŋdəm] (*n*): a kingdom — kingdoms. 'A kingdom' is a country ruled by a king or a queen.

state [steɪt] (*n*): a state — states. 'A state' is a country with its people living together under one government. What is the official name of this state?

sign [saɪn] (*n*): a sign — signs. A dark cloud is a sign of rain. The sign on the door of the shop said: "Closed on Sunday."

industry ['ɪndəstri] (*n*): an industry — industries. What are the important industries of this country?

industrial [ɪn'dʌstriəl] (*adj*): The United States is an industrial country. Are there any industrial cities in the south of England?

saint [seɪnt] (*n*): a saint — saints. 1. Do you know any saints of the Russian Church? 2. The little boy thought his granny was a saint, she always helped him.

consist (of) [kən'sɪst] (*v*): A year consists of twelve months.

surprise [sə'praɪz] (*v*): to surprise — surprised. Dad surprised us. He bought a little puppy.

to be surprised (at) (v): Nick is not surprised at the information. We are all surprised at the latest news.

lonely ['ləʊnlɪ] (*adj*): lonely — lonelier — the loneliest. She is a very lonely person. Bob felt lonely at the new school. A person feels lonely when he is unhappy because he is alone.

careful ['keəfʊl] (*adj*): careful — more careful — the most careful. A person is careful when he thinks about what he is doing or saying. Be more careful with your work. Is she always careful?

careless ['keəlis] (*adj*): He is a very careless driver. Jean was careless when she was running downstairs and she fell. Don't be careless!

carefully ['keəfʊli] (*adv*), **carelessly** ['keəlisli] (*adv*): You must write more carefully, you make so many mistakes. Don't do your work carelessly!

especially [ɪ'speʃli] (*adv*): I like the country especially in spring. This is an especially busy day.

- 11** Say: a) what days a week consists of; b) what months winter and summer consist of; c) how many rooms your flat (house) consists of.

- 12** Answer the questions.

1. What industrial cities do you know in Russia?
2. When do people feel lonely?
3. What is the usual sign of rain?
4. Why don't children go to school in summer?
5. When and where must people be careful?

- 13** Give it a name:

- a) a country ruled by a king;
- b) a country with its people living together under one government.

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 14 Listen to the song "What Are Little Boys Made of?", [2] 42.

WHAT ARE LITTLE BOYS MADE OF?

What are little boys made of?
 What are little boys made of?
 Frogs and snails¹ and puppy-dogs' tails,
 And that's what little boys are made of!
 What are little girls made of?
 What are little girls made of?
 Sugar and spice² and all things nice,
 And that's what little girls are made of!

LET US READ

- 15 Learn to read these proper names:

the United Kingdom (the UK)

[juːnaɪtɪd 'kɪŋdəm]

the British Isles [brɪtɪʃ 'aɪləz]

the Irish Sea [aɪrɪʃ 'siː]

the English Channel [ˌɪŋɡlɪʃ
'tʃænl]

the Straits of Dover [streɪts əv
'dəʊvə]

the Atlantic Ocean [ətˌlæntɪk
'əʊʃn]

the English ['ɪŋɡlɪʃ]

the Scots [skɒts]

the Welsh³ [welʃ]

the Irish ['aɪrɪʃ]

the Irish Republic [aɪrɪʃ rɪˈpʌblɪk]

Northern Ireland [ˌnɔːðən
'aɪələnd]

Wales [weɪlz]

Scotland ['skɒtlənd]

Edinburgh ['edɪnbərə]

Cardiff ['kɑːdɪf]

Belfast [ˌbelfəst]

the North Sea [ˌnɔːθ 'siː]

the Union Jack ['juːniən dʒæk]

English ['ɪŋɡlɪʃ]

Scottish ['skɒtɪʃ]

Welsh⁴ [welʃ]

Irish ['aɪrɪʃ]

¹ snail [sneɪl] — улитка

² spice [spaɪs] — пряность

³ the Welsh — валлийцы (жители Уэльса)

⁴ Welsh (the Welsh language) — валлийский язык (язык Уэльса)

- 16 Read the text to get some new information about Britain. What are all possible names to call the country situated in the two large islands of the British Isles?

THE LAND AND THE PEOPLE OF GREAT BRITAIN

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (the UK) is the official name of the state which is situated in the British Isles. Thus, "Great Britain" is often the same as "Britain" and refers¹ only to Scotland, England and Wales. The "United Kingdom", or the "UK" includes Northern Ireland. It consists of four countries which are England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. You can see them on the map. Their capitals are London, Edinburgh, Cardiff and Belfast.

The UK is an island state. The two main islands are Great Britain (where England, Scotland and Wales are situated) and Ireland. Northern Ireland and the independent Irish Republic are there. The two islands are separated by the Irish Sea.

The UK is separated from the continent by the English Channel and the Straits of Dover. Once the British Isles used to be a part of the continent. The nearest point to Europe is the Straits of Dover. The UK is also washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the north and the North Sea in the east.

Everyone who was born in Britain is British. People from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland are not English. They are Scottish or Scots; Welsh and Irish. People from Scotland and Wales don't like it when they are called English but they are British.

More than 56 million people live in Britain. Many of them live in big industrial cities like London, Manchester and Liverpool, for example, are big industrial cities in the centre of England. But foreigners are often surprised by the fact that much of the land in Britain is open country. There are many lonely hills, quiet rivers, deep lakes and farmlands especially in the south of the country.

Everyone in Britain speaks English, but in some parts of Scotland and Wales people speak different languages as well.

¹ refer to — ОТНОСИТЬСЯ К

THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND NORTHERN IRELAND



The Welsh are especially proud of their language. They like to speak Welsh, to sing songs in Welsh and when you travel you can see road signs in Welsh all over Wales.

Everyone in the UK speaks English but they all speak it differently. A Scottish person has to listen carefully if he wants to understand a Londoner or a Welsh person.

As you know, the flag of the United Kingdom is known as the Union Jack. It is made up of three crosses: the cross of St. George (the patron saint¹ of England), the cross of St. Andrew (the patron saint of Scotland) and the cross of St. Patrick (the patron saint of Ireland).

17 Now you have learnt some more facts about the UK. Could you answer the questions?

1. Where is the UK situated?
2. Why do you think the UK is called "an island state"?
3. What other country is situated in the British Isles?
4. What languages are spoken in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland?
5. How many people live in Britain?
6. What is the Union Jack? What do you know about it?

Reference Material

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (the UK)

<i>State</i> <i>Country</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>People</i>	<i>Language</i>
Great Britain	London	the British	English
England	London	the English	English
Scotland	Edinburgh	the Scots	Scottish/English
Wales	Cardiff	the Welsh	Welsh/English
Northern Ireland	Belfast	the Irish	Irish/English

¹ the patron saint [ˈpeɪtrən ˈseɪnt] — святой покровитель

LET US TALK

- 18 Look through the *Reference Material*, and the map and name:
- the parts (countries) the UK consists of, and their capitals;
 - the people who live in the UK and the languages they speak;
 - big industrial cities of Britain;
 - water bodies around the UK;
 - water bodies that separate Britain from the continent.
- 19 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 16.)
- 20 Do you know any other facts about the land and people of Britain? Tell your classmates about them.

LET US WRITE

- 21 Do ex. 3, 8 in writing.
- 22 Look at Betty and tell your classmates what she says.

EXAMPLE: Betty says (that) her native country is Britain.



1. My native country is Britain.
2. Don't be surprised at this song!
3. Our country consists of four parts.
4. Come to see me, Nell. I feel lonely!
5. Be careful in this cold climate.
6. Protect the flowers from the cold.

- 23 Copy the table below and fill it in.

<i>State</i> <i>Country</i>	<i>Capital</i>	<i>People</i>	<i>Language</i>
Scotland	—	—	—
—	Cardiff	—	—
—	—	the English	—
—	—	the British	English
Ireland	—	—	—

- 24 Write the pronunciation of the underlined words. (See "Look, Read and Remember!", p. 84–85.)

EXAMPLE: I used [just] to swim a lot when I spent my holiday at the seaside.

1. Mr Brown used to live in Scotland when he was a small boy. Now he lives in Wales.
2. I used my notes to prepare for the history class.
3. They used to work at the factory when they were young.
4. He used his book of fairy tales and read them to his son.
5. The children used their imagination to write a story about life in the past.

- 25 Learn to write these words.

kingdom, state, sign, industry, industrial, saint, consist of, surprise, be surprised at, lonely, careful, careless, carefully, carelessly, especially

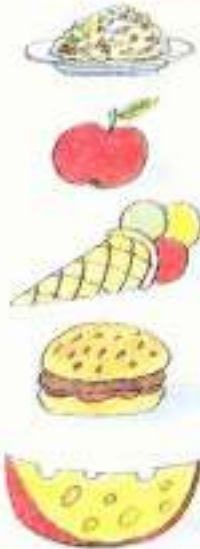
Listening Comprehension, ☐ 43, text "I Hit Him Back First"

Home Reading Lesson 12, text "Climate, Weather and Wildlife"

LESSON 13

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Look at the pictures and say what Pete's breakfast, lunch and dinner consisted of last Thursday.

BREAKFAST	LUNCH	DINNER
		

- 2 Work in pairs. Say what your meals consisted of yesterday (P_1). Tell your classmates what P_1 's meals consisted of yesterday (P_2).

EXAMPLE: P_1 : (Nick): My supper consisted of chicken and vegetables.

P_2 : Nick says his supper consisted of chicken and vegetables.

- 3 Say what countries the UK consists of.

- 4 Name some industrial cities you know in Russia, the UK and other countries.

- 5 Think of something you were surprised at in stories (books, pictures, games, etc.).

EXAMPLE: I was surprised at her visit.

- 6 Say when and why the people were surprised:

My dad	was			they didn't get a letter from Wales.
Pete				he saw me on a horse.
The brothers				she met her Irish relative in Moscow.
Nell's cousin	were	surprised	when	the door of her flat was open.
Mrs Green			because	their car wasn't in its usual place.
The Browns				their friends were not in.

- 7 Work in pairs. Make sentences. Here are the word combinations for you to use:

an independent state, a well-known saint, a usual sign,
a lonely man, careful work, a careless driver, a peaceful kingdom

EXAMPLE: P₁: a well-known saint

P₂: St. Patrick is a well-known saint in Ireland.

- 8 Look at the pictures on the next page and say what the students tell Mr Jones.

EXAMPLE: Jim says he likes fruit, especially bananas.



1. Come again, please.



2. We are always glad to see you!



3. We are going to Wales in May!



4. I have written a story.



5. I will spend a month in Scotland.



6. Don't forget to write to us.



7. My birthday is in three weeks' time.



8. I like fruit, especially bananas.



- 9 You know that English people often begin talking about weather when they meet each other. These are the usual phrases:

It's nice day today, isn't it?

Fine weather we are having today!

What a beautiful day! Not a cloud in the sky!



It's hot (warm) today!
It's hot and humid!¹
It's much too hot today!

C
F

If the weather is not that perfect you may say:

It looks like rain / snow. It's cold outside!
I hope it's not going to snow. It's bitter cold.²
It's freezing!³

C
F

Sometimes people ask questions about weather:

What's the weather like today?
Is it sunny (foggy, dry, rainy, cloudy)?
How's the weather?
Is it going to rain?
Do you think it's going to be a nice day?

C
F

The usual phrases to go on with your talk are:

It sure is. It sure does.
Yes, it is. Yes, it does.
I think it is. I think it does.
It certainly is. It certainly does.

C
F

- 10 Listen to the dialogues, pp 44. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

- 1) — What's the weather like today? Is it sunny?
— It sure is. Dry and warm with just a light breeze.
2) — Is it going to rain?
— I hope not, though it looks like rain. There are many dark clouds in the sky and a cold wind is blowing.⁴

¹ humid [hjuːmɪd] — влажный

² It's freezing! ['friːzɪŋ] — Морозит!

³ bitter cold [bɪtə 'kəʊld] — ужасно холодно

⁴ to blow [bləʊ] — дуть

- 3) — It's a nice day today, isn't it?
 — It certainly is. Not a cloud in the sky, but 30 degrees above zero¹ is too hot, much too hot.
 — Oh, yes. It's hot and humid.
 — Is it usual summer weather in Moscow?
 — Maybe "yes" and maybe "no". It depends, you know.
- 4) — It's cold outside. It's bitter cold.
 — Is it going to snow?
 — I'm not sure but I hope so. The weather will be milder then.
- 5) — Does it look like rain?
 — It certainly does.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

My dog is clever.
 I'm a student.
 They **have** a car.
 You **look** wonderfull
 Nelly **lives** in Paris.
 I **was** at home last night.
 You **can** swim well.
 He **lived** in London in 1993.
 They **wrote** a letter to Mr Brown.
 We **have** bought some apples.
 I **will** go to India.

So is his dog.
 So **are** we.
 So **has** he/ (So **does** he.)
 So **do** you.
 So **does** John.
 So **were** we.
 So **can** Nick.
 So **did** I.
 So **did** they.
 So **has** he.
 So **will** they.

11 Say that people can do (did, will do) the same things that you can.

1. I can dance, and so ... Pete.
2. I like ice cream, and so ... my sister.

¹ 30 degrees above zero [d'gritz ə'bay 'zi:ərə] — 30 градусов выше нуля

3. I spent my holiday in the mountains, and so ... my parents.
4. I will go to the South in summer. So ... my friends.
5. I have many friends. So ... Nick.
6. I was at home on Sunday evening. So ... my grandparents.
7. My brother swims well. So ... I.
8. Ann will go to the theatre tonight. So ... I.

- 12** Work in pairs. Say that you can/will do (would like to do) something or that you could (liked, did, have done) something. Let your friend say that he can do (likes to do, etc.) the same. Don't forget to change over.

EXAMPLE: P₁: I can swim like a fish. P₂: So can I.
P₂: I like oranges. P₁: So do I.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Reported Speech

?

1. She asks: "Is Wales situated in the British Isles?"

She asks if Wales is situated in the British Isles.

2. They ask: "Did it snow yesterday?"

They want to know if it snowed yesterday.

3. Nelly asks: "Have you been to Spain?"

Nelly is interested if I have been to Spain.

4. Bob asks: "Will it be possible?"

Bob wonders if it will be possible.

wh?

1. She asks: "Where is Wales situated?"

She wonders where Wales is situated.

2. They ask: "When did it snow?"

They want to know when it **snowed**.

3. Nelly asks: "Where have you **been**?"

Nelly is interested where I **have been**.

4. Bob asks: "Why will it **be** possible?"

Bob wonders why it **will be** possible.

5. She asks: "How many countries **are** there in the UK?"

She wonders how many countries there **are** in the UK.

13 Say what the people want to know.

Mr Brown: "What is the capital of the United Kingdom?"

Mary: "Is Scotland an independent state?"

Billy: "Why is my cousin so careless?"

The Davidsons: "How many industrial cities are there in the North?"

The teacher: "When will you go to Africa?"

The doctor: "How do you feel?"

14 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

symbol ['sɪmbəl]

empire ['empaɪə]

colony ['kɒləni]

politician [pə'lɪtʃən]

prince [prɪns]

aristocrat ['æɪstəkræt]

princess [ˌprɪn'ses]

permanent [ˌpɜːmənənt]

Ceylon [si'lɒn]

policy ['pɒlɪsi]

Head of State

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

power

royal

to include

former

to offer

law

lawyer

to delay

to elect

to belong (to)

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

power ['paʊə] (*n*): It is out of my power to help you. The power of the church is great in the country. Does the Queen have real power in the UK?

belong (to) [br'ɒŋ] (*v*): belong — belonged. It is my book. It belongs to me. He belongs to this school. What club do you belong to? He never belonged to this group. I don't belong here.

royal ['rɔɪəl] (*adj*): 'Royal' means belonging to a king or queen. The royal family, the royal prince, a royal palace. The royal family lives in the palace. Does he belong to the Royal Society?¹

include [ɪn'klʊd] (*v*): include — included. I included eggs in my shopping list. Anna was not included as a guest. You don't have to buy batteries ['bætərɪz] with that toy because they are already included.

former ['fɔ:mə] (*adj*): 'Former' means belonging to the past: in former times, in former days, in a former life, the former state, the former Soviet Union. Do you know the former President of the State (the one before the latest)?

offer ['ɒfə] (*v*): offer — offered. He offered to help me with the washing up. He offered me his help and advice. Does he ever offer you any money?

law [lɔ:] (*n*): a law — laws. 'A law' is a rule made by government for all the people in a state or country. Laws tell people what they must do and what they must not do.

lawyer ['lɔ:jə] (*n*): a lawyer — lawyers. A lawyer is a person who knows much about the law.

delay [dɪ'leɪ] (*v*): delay — delayed. We must delay our journey. Bob is ill. My work delayed me at the office. The train was delayed two hours by the heavy snowfall. — Why was the start of the game delayed? — It was delayed because of the rain.

elect [ɪ'lekt] (*v*): elect — elected. 'To elect' means to choose someone by vote.² They elected the President. People in Britain elect members of Parliament every five years.

permanent ['pɜ:mənənt] (*adj*): a permanent job, permanent address. Do you have a permanent job here? I don't know his permanent address.

¹ society [sə'saɪəti] — общество

² by vote [vəʊt] — голосованием

15 Give it a name:

- belonging to a king or a queen;
- belonging to the past;
- to choose by vote;
- a rule made by government for all the people of the country;
- a person who knows much about the law.

16 Look at the pictures and say what belongs to Jim and what to Caroline.

EXAMPLE: The ball belongs to Jim.



17 Natasha's mother asked her to buy the following things: *vegetables, bread, cheese, butter, apples, sugar, oranges, meat, fish*. Look at her shopping list and say which of the things are included in it and which are not.

18 Say what John offers to do for his granny.

EXAMPLE: John offers his granny to go shopping.

1. Shall I go shopping?
2. Shall I water the poppies?

SHOPPING LIST

*Fish
Sugar
Oranges
Cake
Chicken
Milk
Bread*

3. Shall I put the lilies in the vase?
4. Shall I clean the floor?
5. Shall I wash up?

19 Say why the football game was delayed. Use the following:

- because of the rain,
- because of the weather,
- because of the snow,
- because the captain was ill,
- because the football players were late.

EXAMPLE: The game was delayed because of the rain.

LET US READ AND LEARN

20 Listen to the poem "The King's Bread and Butter", 45, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

THE KING'S BREAD AND BUTTER

(by A. A. Milne)

I

The King asked
The Queen, and
The Queen asked
The Dairymaid:¹
"Could we have some butter for
The Royal slice² of bread?"
The Queen asked
The Dairymaid,
The Dairymaid
Said: "Certainly,
I'll go and tell

¹ a dairymaid [ˈdeənməɪd] — доярка, работница на молочной ферме

² slice [slaɪs] — ломтик, тоненький кусочек

The Cow
Now
Before she goes to bed."

II

The Dairymaid
She curtsied¹
And went and told
The Alderney;²
"Don't forget the butter for
The Royal slice of bread."
The Alderney
Said sleepily:
"You'd better tell
His Majesty³
That many people nowadays
Like marmalade [ˈmɑːməleɪd]
Instead."

LET US READ

- 21** Do you want to know who rules the country in Britain? If you do, read the text.

THE QUEEN AND PARLIAMENT

It is rather difficult to understand the British way of ruling the country. In Britain the Queen is the Head of State, but in fact she doesn't rule the country as she has no power. The Queen is the symbol of the country, its history and its traditions. She is very rich. She travels about the United Kingdom, meets different people and visits schools, hospitals and other special places. So do all the members of the Royal Family: the Queen's husband, her son Prince Charles, the Queen's daughter Princess Anne and Princess Margaret, the Queen's sister.

¹ curtsy [ˈkɜːtsɪ] — делать реверанс

² Alderney [ˈɒldən] — Буренка (порода коров)

³ His Majesty [ˈhɪz ˈmædʒɪsti] — Его Величество



At the beginning of the 20th century many countries all over the world were ruled by Britain. Among them were the British colonies and they were all part of the British Empire. India, Pakistan and Ceylon, for example, were also part of the Empire. Now these countries are independent states. But in 1949 Britain and the former colonies founded the Commonwealth.¹ The Commonwealth includes many countries such as Canada, Australia, New Zealand and others. The Queen of Great Britain is also the Head of the Commonwealth and the Queen of Canada, Australia and New Zealand.

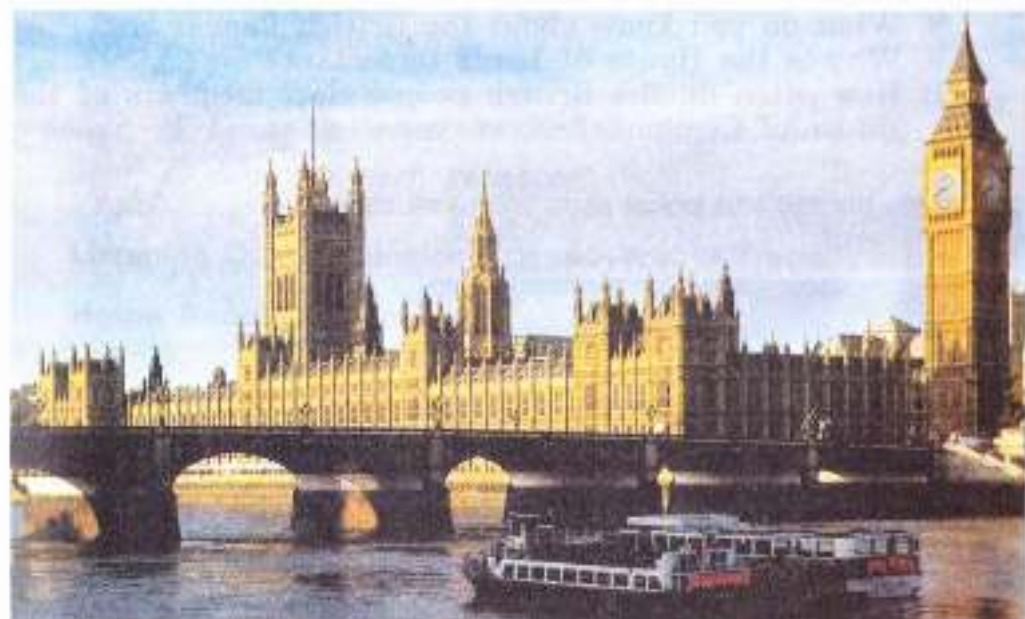
The real power in the country belongs to the British Parliament and to the British Government. The British Parliament has two houses: the House of Commons² and the House of Lords.³ The House of Lords does not have much power but it is very important as it can discuss and change laws, it can delay laws too. The House of Commons makes laws about the policy of the country, taxes⁴ and many other things.

¹ the Commonwealth [ˈkɒmənwelθ] — Содружество наций

² the House of Commons — палата общин

³ the House of Lords — палата лордов

⁴ taxes [ˈtæksɪz] — налоги



The Houses of Parliament

The members of the House of Lords are not elected, they are selected.¹ These members are permanent. They are often aristocrats, people of the church, lawyers and former politicians or life peers.²

The members of the House of Commons are elected. The British people elect 650 members of the House of Commons every five years.

22 Read the answers to the following questions from the text.

1. Who is the Head of State in Britain?
2. Does the Queen rule the country?
3. What does the Queen do?
4. What do you know about the Royal Family?
5. What countries were included into the British Empire at the beginning of the 20th century?
6. What happened in 1949?
7. Who does the real power in Britain belong to?

¹ to select [sɪ'lekt] — отбирать

² a peer [pɪə] — пэр

8. What do you know about the British Parliament?
9. Why is the House of Lords important?
10. How often do the British people elect members of the House of Commons?

- 23 Divide the text into logical parts and name them.

LET US TALK

- 24 Look through the text (ex. 21) again and get ready to talk to your classmates about the Queen and Parliament in Britain.
- 25 Imagine that one of your classmates hasn't read the text. Tell him/her everything you know about:
- the Queen of the UK, of England, Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales and the dominions overseas;
 - the British Parliament.
- 26 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 21.)

LET US WRITE

- 27 Express the following in English.

1) Мне нравится, когда идет снег. 2) Мне нравится, когда на улице тепло. 3) Нику нравится, когда его друзья приходят к нему. 4) Анне нравится, когда деревья в цвету. 5) Нам не нравится, когда ты получаешь такие письма. 6) Нам не нравится, когда они громко разговаривают.

- 28 Do ex. 8, ex. 13 in writing.
- 29 Give the main ideas of the text (ex. 21) writing it out in not more than 10 sentences.

- 30 Learn to write these words.

power, to belong to, royal, to include, former, to offer, law, lawyer, to delay, to elect, permanent

Listening Comprehension, 46, text "A Tragedy in the Air"

Home Reading Lesson 13, text "Rumpelstiltskin", part I

LESSON 14

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Look through the list of words and group them into 4 categories. First read out verbs, then nouns, adjectives and adverbs.

Kingdom, power, state, belong, sign, royal, industry, include, industrial, law, elect, consist, careful, offer, lawyer, delay, carefully, lonely, permanent, be surprised, especially, former.

- 2 Say it right. How many true sentences can you make?

It is	out of in	his her their your our	power	to help to change to offer	the government.
					the plan.
					the laws.
					help.
					the lawyer.
					the life of people.

- 3 Play the 'Champion' game. Who can make up more sentences with: *the royal family, in former days, offer, delay, elect*?
- 4 Try and think of some statements using: *belong, it's out of (in) his (her) power to help ..., include, lawyer, permanent*. Say them to your classmates and let them agree or disagree.

- 5 Ask questions for more information.

1. It belongs to him.
2. He offered it.
3. It was delayed.

- 6 Look through the dialogue. Change it into reported speech and then read it aloud. Don't forget to use the following: *wonders, wants to know, is interested*.

EXAMPLE: David says he likes travelling.
Mary says so does she. She says she always goes to different places.
David wants to know if Mary's dad goes with her.

David: I like travelling.

Mary: So do I. I always go to different places.

David: Does your dad go with you?

Mary: Sometimes he does. He very much likes to travel by car.

David: Where do you usually go?

Mary: We often go to the mountains. We are going to the Oka soon. Come with us, David.

David: Thank you, Mary. I'd love to.

- 7 It is usual for people to pay compliments ['kæmplɪmənts]. Do you remember the way to do it?

You look wonderful today.

You look great!

What a good book!

What wonderful pictures!

That's a nice dress!

Those are nice trousers!

That's a nice colour, it suits you.

CF

People usually receive compliments in this way:

So do you.

Thank you. I'm glad you like it.

Thanks a lot. I'm very glad you like it.

Thank you. You're very kind.

Thanks. You're really very kind.

CF

- 8 Listen to the dialogues,  47. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

- 1) — You look wonderful today!
— So do you.
— Those are nice shoes.
— Thank you. I'm glad you like them.
- 2) — What wonderful pictures! Have you drawn them yourself?
— Yes, I have. Thanks. You're very kind.
- 3) — That's a nice colour, it suits you.
— Thank you. I'm very glad you like it.
- 4) — What a tasty cake! I like it very much.
— Thank you. You are very kind.
— No, I mean it. I really mean it. Your cake is really very good.

- 9 Compliment your classmate on his/her clothes, his/her looks, his/her work and his/her house. Let him/her answer you. Act the dialogues out.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

should/shouldn't + V

You should do it. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{It is a good thing for you to do it.} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{It is the right thing for you to do it.} \\ \text{I advise you to do it.} \end{array} \right.$

You **should** be more careful!
Nick **should** go there with them.
You **shouldn't** tell lies.
She **shouldn't** work so hard.
I think we **should** eat out.
I think Mary **should** join us.

I don't think you **should** do it.
I don't think you **should** buy it.

Must is stronger than **should**.

You **must** go there! (*It's your duty!*¹)

You **should** go there! (*It's my advice.*)

- 10** Choose the correct verb. Complete these sentences with *should* or *shouldn't*.

EXAMPLE: You **should** sit quietly.

Speak, eat, play, say, sit, put.

1. You ... quietly.
2. You ... slowly.
3. You ... in the street.
4. You ... your fingers in your mouth.
5. You ... when someone else is talking.
6. You ... loudly.
7. You ... "Thank you" when you get a compliment.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

either ... or ...

Come **either** today **or** tomorrow.

He is **either** in Paris **or** in London.

Either my father **or** my brothers **are** coming.

But:

Either my brothers **or** my father **is** coming.

- 11** Express the following in English.

1) Сделай это либо сегодня, либо завтра. 2) Купи или яблоки, или апельсины. 3) Он будет или адвокатом, или ученым. 4) Или мои сестры, или мой брат собираются

¹ duty ['dʒʊti] — долг

предложить им помощь. 5) Или мои братья, или мои кузены продолжают эту работу.

12 These are the words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean;

phrase ['freɪz]	continent ['kɒntɪnənt]
topic ['tɒpɪk]	continental [ˌkɒntɪ'nentl]
Latin ['lætɪn]	humour ['hju:mə]
Greek [gri:k]	respectable [rɪ'spektəbl]
table manners ['mænəz]	

You know the word combination to *tell a lie*. What do you think the verb to *lie* means?

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

way	respect	knowledge
hardly ever	knife	offend
show off	seldom	fork
sense	dull	

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

way [weɪ] (*n*): way — ways. 'A way' is a method or plan to do something. This is not the way to do it. The prince thought of a way to take the power. What is the right way to address the Queen? Foreign countries have a different way of life.

seldom ['seldəm] (*adv*): 'Seldom' means not often. I seldom see my friend now that he has moved to another city. She seldom, if ever, reads a book. 'Very seldom' means hardly ever. We go to the theatre very seldom. We hardly ever go to the theatre.

dull [dʌl] (*adj*): dull — duller — (the) dullest. A thing is dull if it is not interesting, if it is boring. A dull book (film, story, play, performance), etc. The film was so dull that Kate left before it was over.

knowledge ['nɒlɪdʒ] (*n*): Knowledge is all that is known. Does he have good knowledge of the French language? My knowledge of Russian history is not very good.

show off [ʃəʊ ˈɒf] (*v*): to show off one's knowledge, to show off one's clothes. He is a boaster and always shows off. He knows much, but I don't like the way he shows off his knowledge. Does he ever show off his clothes?

sense [sens] (*n*): a sense — senses, a sense of humour, a sense of duty. My cousin John never comes on time. He has no sense of time. Do you agree that the English have a wonderful sense of humour?

offend [əˈfend] (*v*): to offend — offended. His words offended me. I'm sorry if I've offended you. Are you sure he was offended by my words? She was offended by her husband.

respect [rɪˈspekt] (*v*): to respect — respected. We respect our teachers. People should respect the law. I never promised to respect your feelings.

respectable [rɪˈspektəbl] (*adj*): He is not a respectable man.

a **fork** [fɔ:k] (*n*), a fork — forks.



a **knife** [naɪf] (*n*), a knife — knives.



a **spoon** [spu:n] (*n*), a spoon — spoons.



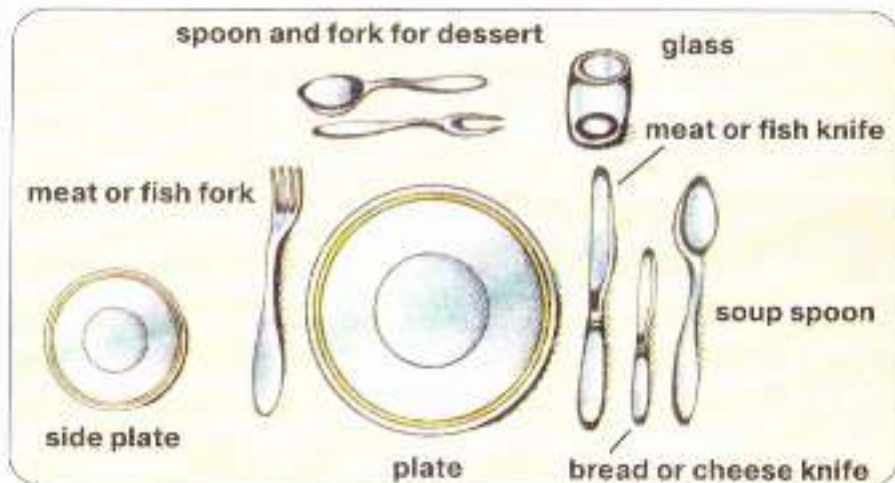
13 Give it a name:

- a method or plan to do something;
- not often;
- very seldom;
- boring, not interesting;
- all that is known.

14 Say it right. How many true sentences can you make?

You		should	show off.
			get a deep knowledge.
			offend people.
		shouldn't	lie.
			look respectable.
			have a sense of humour.

- 15 a) Look at the picture to know how to set the table.



- b) Say how to set the table.

EXAMPLE: You should put a big knife for meat to the right of the plate.

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 16 Listen to the poem "Take Your Elbows¹ Off the Table", 48, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

TAKE YOUR ELBOWS OFF THE TABLE

(by Caroline Graham)

Take your elbows off the table,
Keep those big feet on the floor.
Take your hat off when you come in.
You're not outside
Anymore.

¹ elbow ['elbəʊ] — локоть

Keep your mouth shut¹ when you're eating.
If you're hungry,
Ask for more.
But take your elbows off the table,
And keep those big feet on the floor.

LET US READ

- 17 Read the text to find out the differences between the British and the continental ways of life. Do you think the writer of the text has got a sense of humour?

THE BRITISH WAY OF LIFE

During your four years of English classes you have already learnt a lot about the language and the people who speak it. Here are some facts about the British way if you want to compare it with life on the continent.

In England many things are the other way round.² On the continent people seldom speak about the weather. If they do, it usually means they have no other topics to discuss. In England, if you don't repeat the phrase "It's a nice day today, isn't it?" two hundred times a day people are surprised and think that you are very dull. On the continent Sunday papers³ appear on Monday; in England (the country is really hard to understand) they appear on Sunday. On the continent, some people like cats, others don't but in England cats are very special animals. Everyone loves them and takes care of them.

On the continent people are proud of the things they know. They try to show off their knowledge and often quote⁴ Greek and Latin writers. In England only those who don't know them or who haven't read them do it.

You can offend people on the continent in many ways, for

¹ keep ... shut — держать закрытым

² the other way round — наоборот

³ papers — newspapers and magazines

⁴ quote [kwəʊt] — цитировать

example, if you laugh at them or make jokes about their life and work.

But the English accept everything with a sense of humour. You can offend them only if you tell them they have no sense of humour.

People on the continent either tell you the truth or lie, in England they hardly ever lie, but they don't tell you the truth either.

On Sundays on the continent even the poorest person puts on his best suit and tries to look nice and respectable. In England even the richest man dresses in some old clothes and doesn't shave.¹

Many continentals think life is a game; the English think cricket is a game. On the continent people have good food. In England people have good table manners.

Table Manners

1. You should sit up straight.
2. You shouldn't eat with your fingers.
3. You shouldn't put your elbows on the table.
4. You should put your dirty knife, spoon and fork on your plate.
5. You shouldn't talk with your mouth full.
6. You shouldn't lick² your fingers.
7. You should say "Thank you" after the meal.

- 18** Here are some facts about life on the continent. Find in the text and read out the same information about the British way.

On the continent:

- People seldom speak about weather.
- Sunday papers appear on Monday.
- Some people like cats, others don't.
- People are proud of the things they know. They try to show off their knowledge ...
- You can offend people in many ways: if you laugh at them or make jokes about their life and work.

¹ shave [ʃeɪv] — бриться

² lick [lɪk] — облизывать, лизать

- People either tell you the truth or lie.
- On Sundays even the poorest person puts on his best suit and tries to look nice and respectable.
- Many continentals think life is a game.
- People have good food.

19 Grandmother Lou is taking her grandchildren out for a meal. But they don't have good table manners. Look at the picture and say which child she is talking to.

EXAMPLE: Grandmother Lou tells Bill not to put his elbows on the table.



1. You shouldn't put your elbows on the table.
2. You should sit up straight.
3. You should put your dirty knife and fork on the plate.
4. You shouldn't eat with your fingers.
5. You shouldn't lick your fingers.
6. You shouldn't lick your knife.

LET US TALK

- 20 Now you know some differences between the British and the continental ways of life. Name them, please.
- 21 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 17.)
- 22 What about Russian table manners? Say a few words about them.
- 23 We are sure you've got a younger brother, sister or cousin. Tell him (her) what table manners they should have.

LET US WRITE

- 24 Do ex. 1 and ex. 5 in writing.
- 25 Do ex. 10, ex. 11 and ex. 14 in writing.
- 26 Write from the text (ex. 17) the facts about the British way of life.
- 27 Write down all the good manners you know.
- 28 Learn to write these words.

way, seldom, hardly ever, dull, knowledge, to show off, sense, offend, to respect, respectable, fork, knife – knives, spoon, lie, either ... or, should

Listening Comprehension, ex. 49, text "She Wanted to Show Off"

Home Reading Lesson 14, text "Rumpelstiltskin", part II



HEALTH AND BODY CARE

LESSON 15

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Bob hardly ever takes care of himself. His elder brother John is giving him advice. Look at the table below and say what John is telling Bob.

You	should	be more careful.
	shouldn't	lie in the sun for 3 hours.
		show off your knowledge.
		offend your friends.
		speak to your lawyer.
		respect your teachers.

- 2 What should you do to be healthy?¹ And what shouldn't you do? Look at the pictures and say.



¹ healthy ['helθi] — здоровый



- 3 Express the same idea using *hardly ever*.

EXAMPLE: Nick seldom shows off his knowledge.
Nick hardly ever shows off his knowledge.

1. Bob seldom reads dull books.
2. People seldom talk about the weather on the continent.
3. In Britain people are seldom proud of the things they know.
4. In Britain people seldom do any harm to plants and animals.
5. In Britain people seldom like to live in industrial cities.

- 4 Use *either* or *neither* to make the sentences complete.

EXAMPLE: ... be quiet or leave the library.
Either be quiet or leave the library.

1. I like ... dull books nor dull films.
2. ... you speak to my lawyer or I'll do it.
3. ... Nelly nor Tom can elect members of Parliament.
4. I can offer you ... my help or my knowledge.
5. You will ... offend them nor protect.

- 5 Jane Robinson is a primary school teacher. Look at the sentences and say what she tells (asks) her pupils.

EXAMPLE: Where does the sun rise?
Jane asks where the sun rises.

1. Does power in Britain belong to the Queen?
 2. Why is John laughing?
 3. The sun sets in the west.
 4. Don't do any harm to wild birds and animals!
 5. Be especially careful when you cross the street!
 6. We all live in the United Kingdom.
 7. Why does Nelly feel lonely?
 8. Can you understand these signs?
 9. Does the House of Commons consist of permanent members?
- 6 We hope you do remember how to 'apologize'¹ in English. These are the usual ways to do it:

I'm sorry.	Sorry, I forgot to tell you.	
I'm very sorry.	Sorry about yesterday.	
I'm terribly sorry.	Excuse me.	
It's my fault. ² It's all my fault.	Excuse my being late.	
Sorry, I forgot to call you.	Excuse me for being late.	

People usually receive apologies in these ways:

That's all right.	It's not your fault.	
That's OK.	It's not important, honestly.	
Never mind.	Forget it.	
Don't worry ³ about it.	No problem.	
It doesn't matter.		

- 7 Listen to the dialogues, □ 50. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

¹ apologize [ə'pɒlədʒaɪz] — извиниться, просить извинения

² a fault [fɔ:lt] — вина

³ worry ['wʌri] — беспокоиться

- 1) — I'm sorry about yesterday.
— Forget it. It's not important, honestly. And it was not your fault.
- 2) — Mummy, I'm sorry. The cake was so tasty that I ate it all.
— Oh, dear! Don't worry about it. I'll make another.
- 3) — Sorry, Nick. That's my fault.
— Oh, no, it isn't. Don't worry about it! It doesn't matter.
- 4) — Sorry, I forgot to phone you.
— That's OK. Never mind. I got the figures somewhere else.
- 5) — Excuse my being late. May I come in?
— Yes, you may. Better late than never, but better never late.

8 Choose a partner and tell him/her you would like to apologize for something. Let him/her answer you. Act out the dialogues.

9 Match the pictures and the phrases:

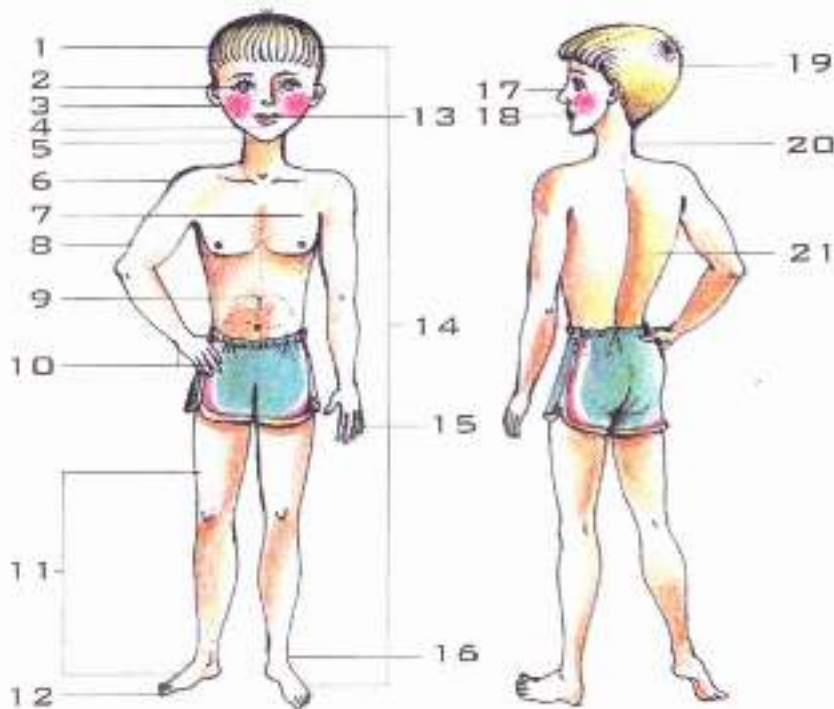


- 1) He has a headache.
- 2) He has stomachache.

- 3) He has (a) toothache.
- 4) She is taking her brother to the dentist.
- 5) Mother is taking Pete to the doctor.

10 Look at the picture and name the parts of Nick's body.

Ear, mouth, arm, body, chin, eye, face, finger, hair, head, heart, leg, foot (feet), lip, nose, shoulder, back, neck, stomach, toe.



11 Now can you guess what these words mean?

earache

backache

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Reported Speech

Nelly **said**: "I live in Pskov."

Nelly **said** that she **lived** in Pskov.

Nelly **told** me she **lived** in Pskov.

After **said that** or **told smb** a verb is usually in the **past**.

<i>Direct Speech</i>	<i>Reported Speech</i>	<i>Examples</i>
am/is	was	She said: "Pete is reading." She said Pete was reading.
are	were	Tom said: "They are friends." Tom said they were friends.
have/has	had	I said to Dolly: "Bob has got a dog." I told Dolly Bob had got a dog. Nelly said to Tim: "I have done it." Nelly told Tim she had done it.
can	could	Bob said to Fred: "I can't swim." Bob told Fred he couldn't swim.
do/does	did	I said: "It doesn't snow here." I said it didn't snow here.
V play	V(ed)/V₃ played	Mary said to Harry: "We play basketball in the gym." Mary told Harry they played basketball in the gym.
write	wrote	Greg said: "I write letters very seldom." Greg said he wrote letters very seldom.

- 12 Tell your classmates what they said.

EXAMPLE: Bella: "My brother never tells lies."
Bella said that her brother never told lies.

Bob: "We have been to London."

Fred: "I always protect my pet."

Mary: "I never do harm to animals."

Mr Brown: "I am surprised at the news!"

Polly and Bill: "We go to school at 9 o'clock."

Lucy: "I can't skate."

- 13 Put in *said* or *told*.

EXAMPLE: I ... Bob to come at 5.
I told Bob to come at 5.

1. Kate ... she had many pets at home.
2. Sam ... me that Robert didn't like porridge.
3. Mother ... her son to go to the dentist.
4. My cousin ... he could ski well.
5. She ... us her knowledge of French was good.

- 14 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

pulse [pʌls], temperature [ˈtemprətʃə]

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

chest	silly	medicine
blood	lung	pain
regular	pressure	health
immediately	break	
hurt	touch	

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

chest [tʃest] (n): 'A chest' is the upper,¹ front part of the body of a person or animals. He has a weak chest.

lung [lʌŋ] (n): a lung — lungs. 'A lung' is one of the two

¹ upper [ʌpə] — верхняя

organs of breathing in the chest of a person and animals.
He has not got good lungs.

cough [kɒʃ] (*v*): 'To cough' means to force air from the lungs with a sudden sound. — Why is Betty at home today? — She has a cold and coughs all the time.

cough (*n*): a cough — coughs. He has a bad cough. What a lot of people have coughs this winter! The coughs of the people in the hall made it impossible to hear the speaker.

blood [blʌd] (*n*): What is the colour of blood? When the policeman came into the room he saw some blood on the floor.

pressure ['preʃə] (*n*): blood pressure, to take one's blood pressure. Does the nurse take his blood pressure two times a day?

break [breɪk] (*v*): break — broke [brəʊk] — broken ['brəʊkn].
1. He fell and broke his leg. Who has broken the window? Mary dropped her doll and broke it. The cup will break if you drop it.

2. Tom will break the law if he drives too fast on this road. She never breaks a promise.

regular ['regjʊlə] (*adj*): 'Regular' means usual, unchanging. He has no regular work. Our regular teacher was not at school today. What is your regular dinner time?

regularly ['regjʊləli] (*adv*): 'Regularly' means in a regular manner. Does he do his morning exercise regularly?

pulse [pʌls] (*n*): a weak pulse, to feel the pulse. Did the doctor feel your pulse when he came? The doctor regularly feels her pulse.

health [helθ] (*n*): There is a Ministry ['mɪnɪstri] of Health in England. Fresh air and exercise are good for the health. Did the doctor tell Mary that she was in very bad health?

healthy ['helθi] (*adj*): a healthy climate (place), a healthy way of living, healthy food. The young boy had a healthy appearance. Walking is a healthy exercise. A person is healthy when he is not ill.

touch [tʌʃ] (*v*): touch — touched. 'To touch' is to put a hand or other part of the body on or against something. Do not touch these things, please.

immediately [ɪ'mɪdiəti] (*adv*): 'Immediately' means at once.

Stop that immediately! If we leave immediately we can get to the cinema on time.

temperature ['temprətʃə] (*n*): to take one's temperature. The nurse sent Mark home from school today with the temperature of 38 degrees. Did Mother ask him to take his temperature?

medicine ['medsn] (*n*): medicine — medicines, to take medicine, a medicine for headache. She took the cough medicine every three hours. This is a good medicine for colds. Does he take medicines regularly?

hurt [hɜ:t] (*v*): hurt — hurt — hurt. He hurt his back when he fell. My shoe hurts me. She hurt his feelings when she laughed at him. Does it hurt when you move?

pain [peɪn] (*n*): to be in pain, to feel some pain, to have a pain in the chest. 'Pain' is a feeling of being hurt. He has a pain in his leg. The pain in Jack's tooth became so bad that he went to the dentist.

silly ['sɪlɪ] (*adj*): silly — sillier — (the) silliest. 'Silly' means foolish. Don't be silly, you can't drive home while it is snowing so heavily.

15 Give it a name:

- the upper, front part of the body;
- one of the two organs of breathing in the chest of a person and animals;
- to force air from the lungs with a sudden, sharp sound;
- to put a hand or other part of the body on or against something;
- at once;
- a feeling of being hurt;
- foolish.

16 Make up not less than 5 sentences (ex. 9, ex. 10, ex. 11 can help you).

- EXAMPLE:**
- a) When he fell he hurt his shoulder.
 - b) The old woman had a pain in her neck.
 - c) This is a good medicine for a headache.

- a) When he fell he hurt his
- b) The old woman had a pain in her
- c) This is a good medicine for a

- 17 Say what the doctor usually does when he/she comes to visit your granny. You may use the words from the box.

EXAMPLE: When the doctor comes to visit my granny, he usually asks her to breathe deeply.

listens to her chest and lungs, takes her blood pressure, takes her temperature, feels her pulse, tells her to take the medicines regularly, tells her how many times a day to take her medicine

- 18 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

It's silly of	you	to take this medicine for blood
	him	pressure.
	her	to go there immediately.
	them	to touch these things.
	us	to break your promise.
		to break the law.
		to offer such help.
		to delay their arrival.

- 19 Nowadays people want to be strong and healthy. What about you? If you want to keep fit¹ remember the rules:

Good Rules to Remember

1. Get up early and go to bed early to keep fit.
2. Take regular exercises to keep fit.
3. Take a cool/cold shower to keep fit.
4. Eat healthy food to keep fit.
5. Never smoke to keep fit.
6. Clean your teeth every morning and every evening to keep fit.
7. Wash your hands before you eat to keep fit.

¹ to keep fit — быть в форме (быть здоровым)

Don't forget.

Too little food makes you thin.
Too much food makes you fat.
The wrong food makes you ill.
The right food keeps you well.
Too many sweets are bad for you especially for your teeth.

- 20 Read the proverb, give the Russian equivalent. Learn it by heart.

Good health is above wealth.¹

LET US READ

- 21 Read the dialogue to find out which of them — the doctor or the patient² was silly.

AT THE DOCTOR'S

Doctor: Would you like to come in?

Patient: Thank you. (*He coughs.*)

Doctor: That cough sounds really very bad. How long have you had it?

Patient: For about 2 weeks. But it's all right.

Doctor: I think I should listen to your chest and to your lungs. Take off your shirt. Breathe in deeply, that's right... and again, please, and once more, please. Sit down. I'm going to take your blood pressure.

Patient: Can I put my shirt on? It's rather cold in here.

Doctor: Oh, certainly you can. Sorry about the cold. The central heating is broken. Well, ... Do you ever take any exercise?

Patient: Not regularly. Sometimes I do. But I hardly ever do morning exercises.

Doctor: You should take more exercise. All right. Now I want to take your pulse. Stand up, please, and touch your toes. Do you smoke?

¹ wealth [weɪθ] — богатство

² patient [ˈpeɪjənt] — пациент



Patient: Oh, yes, I do, Doctor. About ten cigarettes a day.

Doctor: You shouldn't smoke at all. You should stop immediately. Now, I want to take your temperature. OK. That's all right. Well, there you are then. Take this medicine 3 times a day after meals.

Patient: But, Doctor, I didn't come about my cough.

Doctor: You didn't?

Patient: No, it's my feet, Doctor. My feet hurt every time I walk.

Doctor: Take your shoes off! Let me see. Do they hurt now?

Patient: Oh, yes, they hurt. It hurts awfully here. I've had this pain for about 2 weeks.

Doctor: I see... And these shoes... How long have you had them?

Patient: The shoes? Oh, for about 2 weeks, Doctor. Oh, yes. I see, Doctor. It's silly of me. Thank you, Doctor. Goodbye.

22 Answer the questions.

1. Why did the patient come to see the doctor?
2. Why did the doctor begin to listen to the patient's chest and lungs?
3. Why was it cold in the doctor's room?
4. Was the patient a healthy man?

23 Read the text (ex. 21) with a partner.

24 Role play the dialogue. Then change over (ex. 21).

LET US TALK

25 Say what people do it:

- they have a headache;
- they can't sleep;
- they have (a) toothache;
- they have a pain in the heart;
- they have a cold;
- they have stomachache.

to go to the dentist, to call a doctor, to go to bed, to take some medicine, to have a walk outdoors, to drink warm milk, to drink warm milk with honey or butter

26 Say what you should/shouldn't do to be healthy (ex. 19 can help you).

27 Think of a story to illustrate the proverb (ex. 20) and tell it.

LET US WRITE

28 This is a short summary of the dialogue (ex. 21). Write it down referring to the past.

A patient comes to see the doctor. He is coughing badly. The doctor says he doesn't like the patient's cough and asks him to take off his shirt. He wants to know how long the patient has had his cough. The doctor asks if the patient takes much exercise. The patient says that he doesn't do it regularly and explains that he hasn't come about his cough. He says his feet hurt every time he walks. He has had this pain for 2 weeks. Then he understands that he has had new shoes for 2 weeks too.

29 Do ex. 4, ex. 12, ex. 16 in writing.

30 Learn to write these words:

chest, lung, cough, blood, pressure, to break (broke, broken), regular, regularly, pulse, health, healthy, to touch, immediately, temperature, medicine, to hurt (hurt, hurt), pain, silly

Listening Comprehension, 51, text "Tim Takes Medicine"

Home Reading Lesson 15, text "Rumpelstiltskin", part III

LESSON 16

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Let's play the 'Champion' game. Name all the parts of a body you remember. Who's finished the list? He/She is the champion.

EXAMPLE: P₁: A head.

P₂: ...

- 2 Work in pairs. P₁ should make up a compound,¹ P₂ — a sentence with it.

EXAMPLE: P₁: earache

P₂: I've never had earache.

stomach, tooth, head, back, ear, ache

- 3 Yesterday Nick did a lot of wrong things. He tries to apologize. His elder sister calms him down.² Complete the dialogues.

1) Nick: Sorry, I forgot to buy the medicine for granny.

Sister:

2) Nick:

Sister: Don't worry about it. I've already done it.

3) Nick: Excuse my being late for lunch.

Sister:

¹ a compound [kəm'paund] — сложное слово

² to calm down — ад. успокоить

4) *Nick:*

Sister: No problem. It was not your fault.

- 4 Yesterday Pete fell ill. The doctor came, examined¹ him and talked to him. Say what the doctor told Pete.

EXAMPLE: "Don't run about! Stay in bed."
The doctor told Pete not to run about and to stay in bed.

1. You should take your temperature twice a day.
2. Are you coughing badly?
3. Breathe in deeply, through the nose.
4. Take this medicine regularly, three times a day.
5. I'd like to listen to your lungs.
6. Does it hurt to move?

- 5 Boris's mother asked him to do some things before going out. When she came back she saw that he had done nothing. Mother got angry. What did she tell Boris? The words below can help you.

EXAMPLE: You should wash up immediately.

to buy the medicine, to clean the carpet, to wash the forks, knives and spoons, to wash up, to make the bed



- 6 Pretend you are a doctor, choose 'a patient' among your friends, complete the dialogue and role play it.

Patient: Oh, Doctor

Doctor: I see. Take off your blouse. I would like to listen to your heart and lungs.

Patient: Yes, Doctor. And

Doctor: Have you taken your temperature?

¹ examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] — осматривать

Patient:

Doctor: Don't worry.

Patient: What shall I take for my cold?

Doctor:

- 7 Think of three more questions and answers to continue the conversation. Role play the whole dialogue. Don't forget to change over.
- 8 We are sure you remember the way to ask for information and to give people information when they need it, especially when you are in some place you don't know very well. These are the usual phrases:

Excuse me, can you tell me the way to ...?

How can I get to ...?

How long does it take to get to ...?

Is this ...?

Does this bus go to ...?

Is there a post office near here?

Is the museum open on Sunday?

Are the shops open on Sunday?

When do they (does it) close?



- 9 Listen to the dialogues,  52. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

1) —Excuse me, officer. Can you help me?

—Yes. How may I help you?

—Can you tell me the way to Trafalgar Square?

—Of course. Go down this street and turn to the right. In less than ten minutes you'll see Trafalgar Square.

—Thanks a lot.

—Anytime.

2) —Excuse me, please. I think I'm lost.¹ How can I get to the Houses of Parliament?

—Walk straight along the street and on the left you'll see a building with a beautiful tower and a big clock. That's it.

¹I'm lost — я потерялся

- How long does it take?
 - Only a few minutes.
 - Thank you very much.
 - You're welcome.
- 3) — Is there a post office near here? I'd like to buy some stamps.
- Yes, there is. It's just over there on the opposite side of the street. But I'm afraid it is closed.
 - Is it open tomorrow?
 - Sure.
 - What time does it open?
 - It opens at nine, I think.
 - Thanks.
 - You're welcome. Glad I was able to help.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Reported Speech (Future in the Past)

Nelly said: "I **will** help you."

Nelly said she **would** help us.

Carol said: "We **shan't** arrive at 5."

Carol said they **wouldn't** arrive at 5.

Phil asked Mary: "Will you go shopping?"

Phil asked Mary if she **would** go shopping.

Don't forget to change the following:

tomorrow	→	the next day
in 2 days	→	2 days later
in 3 weeks	→	3 weeks later

in 5 months	→	5 months later
next day	→	the next day, the following day
this	→	that
now	→	then

Peter said: "We shall start **in 2 weeks.**"

Peter said they would start **2 weeks later.**

Ann asked: "What will you do **next Friday?**"

Ann asked what I should do the **following Friday.**

Bill asked: "Why will she come **tomorrow?**"

Bill asked why she would come **the next day.**

- 10** This is what Ada said when she met Susan. Tell your classmates what she said.

EXAMPLE: Ada: "I will be fourteen in January."
Ada told Susan she would be fourteen in January.

1. Ada: "We will buy the medicine later."
2. Ada: "Tim will phone us."
3. Ada: "They will spend their holiday in Spain."
4. Ada: "Bill will go shopping after lunch."
5. Ada: "Father will go to the bank."
6. Ada: "We shall go to the cinema on Monday."

- 11** Work in groups of three. Follow the example.

EXAMPLE: P₁: I will go to the Crimea next month.
P₂: What did P₁ say?
P₃: He said he would go to the Crimea next month.

1. The doctor will feel my pulse.
2. I am sure my little brother will break this toy car.
3. My granny will take my temperature.
4. My mother will take her blood pressure.
5. My elder sister will visit a doctor tomorrow.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

no indefinite
article ~~a/an~~

weather
advice
information
knowledge
progress
money
news
hair¹

→ is always in
the singular

1. What wonderful **weather** we are having today!
2. It's good **advice**. Thank you for it.
3. No **news** is good **news**.
4. Is bad **news** better than no **news**?
5. Where is the **money**? — It is on the table.
6. What interesting and unusual **information**! You have to believe it!

12 Express the following in English.

- 1) Какая чудесная погода! 2) Новости важные. Кто принес их? 3) Советы хороши, но я не могу последовать им.
- 4) Сведения неверные. Постарайся получить их снова.
- 5) Где деньги? — Я положила их в сумку. Я думаю, они там.

13 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

match [mætʃ], phone [fəʊn], patient ['peɪʃənt], to examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] a patient, serious ['sɪəriəs], seriously ['sɪəriəʃli], to run (have) a high temperature, pretty bad = very bad

¹ hair в значении *волосы* всегда употребляется в единственном числе, однако возможно более редкое употребление *hairs* в значении *волоски*

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

excite	sneeze	worry
prescribe	throat	fall
nod	recover	fall ill
tongue	swallow	

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

excite [ɪk'saɪt] (v): excite — excited. 'To excite' means to make smb feel happy or enthusiastic about smth pleasant or good. The story excited the little boy very much. Don't excite yourself!

to be (get) excited about (by) smth: The patient is very ill and must not be excited. There is nothing to get excited about. Everybody was excited by the news of the victory.

throat [θrəʊt] (n): 'The throat' is the front of the neck. When you have a cold your throat is often red. To have a sore [sɔ:] throat. Nick is ill. He has a sore throat. I often have a sore throat in autumn.

fall [fɔ:l] (v): fall — fell — fallen. The book fell from the table to the floor. He fell out of the window. The leaves fall in autumn.

to fall ill: He has fallen ill.

nod [nɒd] (v): nod — nodded. 'To nod' means to bow the head quickly as a sign of agreement or as a greeting. I asked him if he could come and he nodded. He nodded to me as he passed. He nodded to show that he understood. The president nodded and everyone sat down around the table. He nodded as if to say "yes".

examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] (v): examine — examined, to examine a patient, to examine a child, to examine a new theory [θiəri], plan. The doctor examined the child to see if she was ill.

swallow ['swɒləʊ] (v): swallow — swallowed. 'To swallow' is to move food or drink down the throat from the mouth into the stomach. The child had a sore throat and it was difficult for him to swallow.

tongue [tʌŋ] (n): a tongue — tongues. 'The tongue' is a movable organ in the mouth, used for tasting and swal-

lowing or speaking. People use their tongues to speak. An animal's tongue is cooked and used as food. Mother tongue. My mother tongue is Russian. His mother tongue is English.

worry ['wʌrɪ] (*v*): worry — worried. 'To worry' means to give a person (oneself) no peace of mind. What is worrying you? — I have a bad tooth that is worrying me. She worries about little things. Her parents worry when she is out too late. The arithmetic problem worried her.

sneeze [sni:z] (*v*): sneeze — sneezed. He has caught a cold and now he is sneezing very often. Whenever Tom has a cold he always coughs and sneezes.

serious ['sɪəriəs] (*adj*): serious — more serious — the most serious, a serious face, a serious problem. After a few jokes his speech became serious.

seriously ['sɪəriəʃli] (*adv*): 'Seriously' means in a serious manner. He is seriously ill.

recover [ri'kʌvə] (*v*): recover — recovered. He has recovered from his bad cold and can go out tomorrow. She recovered slowly after her long illness.¹

prescribe [pri'skraɪb] (*v*): prescribe — prescribed, to prescribe a medicine for ... (smb/smth). The doctor prescribed a new medicine for the pain in my chest. The doctor prescribed some medicine for John and he soon recovered.

14 Give it a name:

- the front of the neck;
- to bow the head quickly as a sign of agreement or as a greeting;
- to look at smth closely and carefully in order to find out something;
- to move food or drink down the throat from the mouth into the stomach;
- an organ in the mouth used for tasting, swallowing or speaking;
- to give a person (oneself) no peace of mind.

¹ illness ['ɪlɪns] — болезнь

- 15 Make up not less than 6 sentences, completing the following.

Everybody was excited by ...

EXAMPLE: Everybody was excited by their arrival.

- 16 Work in pairs. P_1 names a part of the body. P_2 uses this word in the sentence *The doctor prescribed a new medicine for the pain in my ...*. Don't forget to change over.

EXAMPLE: P_1 : chest

P_2 : The doctor prescribed a new medicine for the pain in my chest.

- 17 You came to see your friend after the doctor's visit. Ask him/her questions about this visit.

EXAMPLE: Did the doctor examine your body?

- 18 Say it right. How many true sentences can you make?

I asked him	to help me	and he nodded as if to say "yes".
	to prescribe the medicine	
	to examine the child	
	to swallow a spoonful of the medicine	
	to show me his tongue	

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

V + -able = Adj

imagine	+ -able = imaginable
respect	+ -able = respectable
read	+ -able = readable
break	+ -able = breakable
move	+ -able = movable

Adj + -ness = N

white + -ness = whiteness

ill + -ness = illness

polite + -ness = politeness

weak + -ness = weakness

- 19** Look at the table above and fill in the necessary words.

EXAMPLE: The ... of the snow is fantastic!
The whiteness of the snow is fantastic!

1. She is very ill but the doctor doesn't know what ... it is.
2. Though the cup is made of thin glass it is not
3. The Queen thought of all names ... to guess the name of Rumpelstiltskin.
4. Everybody respects this gentleman. He is very
5. I can't read the book. I don't think it is
6. Strong people don't like
7. We were surprised at your formal

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 20** Listen to the poem "Your Cold Is Getting Worse",  53, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

YOUR COLD IS GETTING WORSE

(by Caroline Graham)

Your cold is getting worse,
You ought to¹ see the nurse.

Oh, no, I'm fine.
My cold is much better.

¹ ought to = should

Your cough is getting worse,
You ought to see the nurse.

Oh, no, I'm fine.
My cough is much better.

Your cough sounds bad.
It doesn't sound good.
You ought to see the nurse.
You really should.

- 21** Read the proverb, give the Russian equivalent. Learn it by heart.

Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.¹

LET US READ

- 22** Read the text and say what Ronald's imaginary illnesses are and when he usually has them.

RONALD IS REALLY ILL

Last Thursday morning Ronald Bell took part in the football match. The game was really exciting and Ronald's team² won. The weather that day wasn't fine at all. It was rather cold, there were dark clouds in the sky and it even started to rain several times.

When Ronald came home he felt that something was wrong with him. He had a terrible headache, a sore throat and he had a bad pain in his legs. He felt so bad that he decided to go to bed without his dinner. His mother understood that Ronald was ill and phoned Doctor Green. "Doctor, I think Ronald has fallen ill. Could you come?"

Doctor Green visited the Bells the next morning. She was a nice woman of about 35. She came into Ronald's room and asked him how he felt. Then she took the boy's pulse, listened to his heart and lungs: "You feel pretty bad, don't you?" she asked.

¹ wise [waɪz] — мудрый

² team [ti:m] — команда



"Terrible," Ronald nodded. He said that sometimes when they had had a test at school he could pretend to be ill, just because he didn't want to go to school. But it was not his "trick" illness this time. The doctor examined the boy's throat and tongue. Ronald said that he had stomachache and a pain in the right side.¹

Doctor Green took the boy's temperature. It was rather high. His throat was red and it was difficult for him to swallow and to breathe. Ronald's mother asked if it was flu or tonsillitis.² But Doctor Green told her not to worry. She said it was neither flu nor tonsillitis. It was just a bad cold.

"Ronald is running a high temperature. He is sneezing and coughing now, but I'm sure, he will be much better in a few days. It is not serious. I am going to prescribe some medicine for his headache and his sore throat. Please, Mrs Bell, go and get the medicine. And you, Ronald, should stay in bed for 3 days at least.³ Drink warm milk with honey or mineral water. Then you will recover soon. Cheer up! I'll send a specialist to have a look at your right side. Bye!" With these words she left the room.

¹ side — шд, бок

² tonsillitis [tensɪ'taɪtɪs] — ангина

³ at least [lɪst] — по крайней мере

- 23 Find and read aloud the sentences to describe:
- the weather;
 - Ronald's illness;
 - what the doctor did when she came;
 - what the doctor asked Ronald to do.
- 24 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer.
- 25 Put the points in a logical order according to the text.
1. The doctor's advice.
 2. The mother's call to the doctor.
 3. The weather on the football match day.
 4. The doctor's visit.
 5. Ronald's health at the end of the day.

LET US TALK

- 26 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 22.) Use ex. 25 as a plan.
- 27 We hope you understand the proverb (ex. 21). Then think of a story to illustrate it and tell the story to your classmates.
- 28 Choose a partner and talk to him/her about the doctor's last visit when you were ill.

LET US WRITE

- 29 Make a list of all the parts of the body you remember.
- 30 Do ex. 4, ex. 11, ex. 12 in writing.
- 31 Form the words according to the example. (See "Look, Read and Remember!", p. 211-212.) Check the spelling of the new words in the dictionary.

V + -able =

respect —
move —
change —
forget —
count —

Adj + -ness =

weak —
polite —
dark —
fresh —
ugly —

32 Learn to write these words.

to excite, to be/get excited about/by smth, throat, to fall (fell, fallen), to fall ill, to nod, to examine, to swallow, tongue, to worry, to sneeze, serious, seriously, to recover, to prescribe

Listening Comprehension,  54, text "The Doctor's Advice"

Home Reading Lesson 16, text "The Old Woman and the Doctor"

LESSON 17

LET US REVIEW

- 1** Group the words into 4 categories: N, V, Adj, Adv.

Excite, seriously, throat, immediately, cough, sneeze, recover, serious, blood, pain, silly, worry, tongue, swallow, hurt, nod, fall, examine, regularly, lung, chest, carefully, seldom

- 2** Complete the sentences.

1. ... excited the little girl very much.
2. ... he always coughs and sneezes.
3. The doctor prescribed a medicine for
4. ... is seriously ill.

5. She worries about
6. People use their tongue to

3 Agree or disagree.

1. When you have a sore throat you can go for a walk.
2. You should always stay in bed when you cough.
3. You will recover quicker if you stay in bed.
4. If the doctor prescribes a medicine for you, you shouldn't take it regularly.
5. A person is healthy when he is free from illness.
6. You should eat the right food to keep fit.

4 Bob was ill. Mother tried to encourage¹ him. Say what Mother told Bob.

EXAMPLE: You will stay in bed till tomorrow.
Mother said he would stay in bed till the next day.

Mother: — You will stay in bed till tomorrow.
— We shall go to the doctor in 3 days.
— The doctor will feel your pulse.
— The doctor will listen to your heart.
— I shall take your temperature.
— Don't worry. You will recover soon.

5 Peter is a boy from the USA. He is in the centre of Moscow. He is near the monument to Y. Dolgoruky. He is lost. Pretend you are Peter and ask the way to:

- a) the nearest post office,
- b) Red Square,
- c) the Bolshoi Theatre.

Let your classmates tell you the way.

6 Make up: a) adjectives from the following verbs: *respect, move, drink, break*;
b) nouns from adjectives: *ill, white, polite, kind*.

EXAMPLE: a) laugh — laughable
b) serious — seriousness

¹ to encourage [in'kandʒ] — подбодрить

- 7 Do you remember some phrases people use when they talk at the shops?
If not, look at the list below.

How much does it cost? ¹	What can I do for you?
How much is it?	Why don't you buy it?
I'd like to have a look at ...	Can I help you?
Can you show me ...?	What size are you?
Excuse me, I'd like ...	What would you like to see?
Can you change ...?	What would you like to buy?



- 8 Listen to the dialogues, ☞ 55. Read, learn them by heart and then act them out.

AT THE CHEMIST'S²

- 1) — Good afternoon.
— Good afternoon. Can I help you?
— Yes, I've got a terrible headache.
— How long have you had it?
— Only about two or three hours.
— Try this medicine.
— How much does it cost?
— Three pounds, please.
— Here you are. Thank you.
— Thank you.
- 2) — Good morning.
— Good morning. What can I do for you?
— I'd like a toothbrush³ and a tube of toothpaste.⁴
— Is that all, madam?
— Yes, that's all, thank you.

- 9 Fill in *a, the* or *'...'* to complete the sentences.

- What ... fine weather we are having today!
- ... information is very important.
- Where is ... money?

¹ cost [kɒst] (cost; cost) — стоить

² at the chemist's ['kemɪsts] — в аптеке

³ a toothbrush ['tu:θbrʌʃ] — зубная щетка

⁴ a toothpaste ['tu:θpeɪst] — зубная паста

- Do you think ... money is important in our life?
- What ... weather do you like ... cold weather or ... hot weather?
- What ... important news!
- ... advice is good.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Reported Speech

Nelly said: "I **have bought** a good book."

Nelly said: "I **bought** a good book."

Nelly said she **had bought** a good book.

present perfect } → past perfect (in the reported speech)
past indefinite }

Ann said to Helen: "Pete **broke** the glass."
"Pete **has broken** the glass."

Ann told Helen Pete **had broken** the glass.

Fred asked Jill: "Did you **hear** the news?"
"Have you **heard** the news?"

Fred asked Jill if she **had heard** the news.

Frank asked Tom: "Where **did Jack go**?"
"Where **has Jack gone**?"

Frank asked Tom where Jack **had gone**.

Don't forget the following changes.

here	→	there	now	→	then
this	→	that	these	→	those
today	→	that day	yesterday	→	the day before
ago	→	before	last	→	the previous ¹

¹ previous [ˈpriːviəs] — предыдущий

Compare:

Frank said: "It's hot **here**."
Frank said it was hot **there**.

Mary asked: "Where do you live **now**?"
Mary asked (me) where I lived **then**.

David asked: "Have you seen **this** film?"
David asked (me) if I had seen **that** film.

Jane asked: "Have you bought **these** flowers?"
Jane asked (me) if I had bought **those** flowers.

John asked: "What are you doing **today**?"
John asked (us) what we were doing **that day**.

Betty asked: "Where was Nora **yesterday**?"
Betty asked where Nora had been **the day before**.

Kate asked: "Who broke the cup **3 days ago**?"
Kate asked who had broken the cup **3 days before**.

Sara asked: "Why didn't you go to school **last Friday**?"
Sara asked (me) why I hadn't gone to school **the previous Friday**.

10 Work in groups of three. Follow the example.

EXAMPLE: P_1 : I wrote to my parents yesterday.
 P_2 : What did P_1 say?
 P_3 : He said he had written to his parents
the day before.

1. I wrote to my parents yesterday.
2. Jack is coughing badly.
3. The doctor examined the patient two days ago.
4. Val is seriously ill now.
5. You will recover soon.
6. Show me your tongue, please.
7. Where did you go last night?
8. Have you done it today?

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

ill/sick¹

Nick is ill.

Nick is a sick boy.

the sick boy	the boy is ill/sick
the sick girl	the girl is ill/sick
the sick children	the children are ill/sick
the sick pupils	the pupils are ill/sick

to be ill = to be sick (*Am. E.*)

11 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

a diet ['daɪət]

to keep to a diet

to be on a diet

to keep to a diet of salad and fruit

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

suffer

ride

definite

cream

soft drinks

definitely

bitter

fry

soft

bicycle

cottage cheese

dairy products

c) Read the sentences to know how to use the words.

suffer ['sʌfə] (*v*): suffer — suffered. 'Suffer' means to feel pain.

to suffer from: He suffers from headaches. She has suffered from a sore throat all week. She suffered from a broken leg.

diet ['daɪət] (*n*): 'Diet' is what one usually eats and drinks. The Japanese diet of fish, rice² and vegetables. Proper

¹ sick [sɪk] — больной

² rice [raɪs] — рис

diet and exercise are both important for health. The doctor ordered him a diet without sugar.

to be on a diet: No cake for me, thank you! I'm on a diet.

to keep to a diet: The doctor told me to keep to a diet.

fry [fraɪ] (v): fry — fried. Shall I fry the fish for dinner?

Andy fried bacon and eggs for breakfast. Fried food, fried eggs.

cream [kri:m] (n): Cream is at the top of the milk. Butter is made from cream. Do you like cream? Would you like your coffee with cream?

soft [sɒft] (adj): soft — softer — (the) softest. 'Soft' is not hard. Soft ground, soft voice, soft water, a soft drink. She has a soft voice. He likes only soft drinks.

cottage cheese [kɒtɪdʒ 'tʃi:z] (n): 'Cottage cheese' is a soft white cheese. Russian people often eat cottage cheese for breakfast.

dairy products ['deəri 'prɒdʌkts] (n): dairy products — products made from milk. My granny eats a lot of dairy products.

bitter ['bɪtə] (adj): 1. 'Bitter' means having a bad taste. The strong coffee tasted bitter. The boy did not like the bitter medicine for his cough.

2. Bitter cold, bitter enemy. Put on your sweater. It's bitter cold. Paul is my bitter enemy.

definite ['defɪnɪt] (adj): I want a definite answer "yes" or "no". It is definite that Mary is going to school next autumn. The definite article, the indefinite article.

definitely ['defɪnɪtli] (adv): Definitely — in a definite way. He is definitely going to speak. That answer is definitely true. — Are you going with us? — Definitely.

ride [raɪd] (v): ride — rode — ridden. 'To ride' means to sit on a horse or other animal and be carried along by it. He jumped on his horse and rode away. The youngest child rode on its father's back. We rode across the fields.

bicycle ['baɪsɪkl] (n): a bicycle — bicycles, a bicycle — bike, to ride a bicycle, to get on a bicycle, to get off a bicycle. Can you ride a bicycle? He got on his bike and rode slowly down the road.

my (his) cup of tea: I don't want to ride a horse, it's not my cup of tea.

12 Give it a name:

- to feel pain;
- to be cooked in hot oil¹ or butter;
- having a bad taste;
- clear and certain;
- in a definite way;
- to sit on a horse or other animal and be carried along by it;
- not hard.

13 Answer the questions.

1. What dairy products do you know?
2. Who suffers from headaches in your family?
3. Who is on a diet without sugar? (meat? bread?)
4. Which of your family keeps to a diet of salad and fruit?
5. What is made from cream?
6. What is made from milk?
7. Which of you likes fried eggs?
8. When do you usually fry fish?
9. Strong coffee tastes bitter, doesn't it?
10. Who is definitely going to speak?
11. Where can you ride a bicycle?
12. You like soft drinks, don't you?

14 Disagree.

EXAMPLE: — You get a sore throat when you keep to a diet of fruit.

— I'm afraid you are not right. You don't get a sore throat when you keep to a diet of fruit.

1. When you suffer from a headache you have a pain in the stomach.
2. When you suffer from tonsillitis you have a pain in your leg.
3. If you are on a diet you usually eat a lot of fried food.

¹ oil [oil] — подсолнечное масло

4. Your mother lets you eat ice cream when you have a sore throat.
5. You never stay in bed, when you are seriously ill.

15 Look at the pictures and say where Nick rides his bicycle.



16 Say it right. How many true sentences can you write?

EXAMPLE: Swimming is not her cup of tea.

Swimming		her	
Riding a bike		my	
Playing the piano	is not	his	cup of tea.
Writing poems		your	
Shopping			
Reading detective stories			

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 17 Listen to the poem "Mama Knows Best", 56, and read it. Then learn it by heart.

MAMA KNOWS BEST

(by Caroline Graham)

You shouldn't do it that way.
You ought to do it this way.
 You ought to do it this way.
 You ought to do it my way.

You shouldn't wear it that way.
 You ought to wear it this way.
You ought to wear it this way.
 You ought to wear it my way.

You shouldn't go with them.
 You ought to go with us.
You shouldn't take the train.
 You ought to take the bus.

You shouldn't wear that hat.
 You ought to cut your hair.
You shouldn't get so fat.
 You ought to eat a pear.

You shouldn't do it that way.
You ought to do it this way.
 You ought to do it this way.
 You ought to do it my way.

LET US READ

- 18 Some people live long lives and feel really well, some people suffer from all illnesses imaginable. What helps a person to keep fit, to remain healthy? You know some rules already. Now read the dialogue and draw out some more rules about what people should/shouldn't do to keep fit.

WHAT WE SHOULD DO TO KEEP FIT

David: Hi, Steve. You look fantastic! I haven't seen you for a long time and you haven't changed a bit. You really look healthy.



Steve: I guess I do. I hardly ever get a cold, maybe once in 2 or 3 years and that's all. I never suffer from anything.

David: No headaches, backaches, pains in the stomach?

Steve (laughs): No, and my legs don't hurt and my arms don't hurt either.

David: Do you think that's because of your diet or the exercise you take?

Steve: Oh, I don't know. I mean I like food, and I think I eat healthy food — fruit, vegetables, lots of salad. But I also enjoy fried food, meat, fish. And I like dairy products — milk, cream, sour cream, cottage cheese. I eat bread and

I am fond of pancakes with caviar though I don't like sweets. In fact I like neither bitter nor sweet things. So, as you see, I can't say I keep to a diet.

David: No, definitely not. Do you take regular exercise?

Steve: Not enough I think. My work keeps me busy. In summer I play volleyball, swim and ride a bicycle. Last summer I tried to ride a horse but quickly understood that wasn't my cup of tea.

David: Do you go in for any winter sports?

Steve: Not really. I mean I walk a lot. But no jogging or playing indoor games. So that's the exercise I do. By the way I don't smoke and never drink alcohol, only soft drinks.

19 Read out what Steve does to keep fit.

20 Choose the right variant according to the text (ex. 18).

1. a) Steve hasn't changed a bit.
b) Steve has changed a lot.
2. a) Steve never suffers from anything.
b) Steve suffers from all illnesses imaginable.
3. a) Steve's legs hurt a lot.
b) Steve's legs hardly ever hurt.
4. a) Steve takes a lot of exercise.
b) Steve doesn't go in for sports regularly.
5. a) Steve keeps to a diet.
b) Steve doesn't keep to a diet.
6. a) Steve drives a car.
b) Steve rides a bike.

LET US TALK

- 21 Pretend you are a doctor. Let the classmates answer your questions about their health.
- 22 Retell the text (ex. 18) in your own words. Refer your retelling to the past.
- 23 Say what you should eat for good health.
- 24 Say what exercise you should take to keep fit.

LET US WRITE

- 25 You are sure to know some words for food and drink. Copy the table and fill it in.

Food		Drinks	
<i>Cold</i>	<i>Hot</i>	<i>Cold</i>	<i>Hot</i>

- 26 Write not less than 10 good rules to keep fit.
- 27 Do ex. 4, ex. 9 in writing.
- 28 Remember the last time you were ill. Describe it. (Write not less than 10 sentences.)
- 29 Learn to write these words.

to suffer (from), diet, to be on a diet, to keep to a diet, to fry, cream, soft, soft drink, cottage cheese, dairy products, bitter, definite, definitely, to ride (rode, ridden), bicycle (bike), (not) my (his) cup of tea

Listening Comprehension, □ 57, text "An Ill Turn"

Home Reading Lesson 17, text "George Mikes and His Book"

LESSON 18

Review 2

LET US TALK

- 1 Imagine that you are a teacher of geography. Use the map of Great Britain (see p. 161) and tell your imagined pupils all you can about Britain. (Lesson 12, ex. 16, ex. 18, ex. 19 can help you.)
- 2 Say all you can about the power of state in Great Britain, the Queen and Parliament. (Lesson 13, ex. 21, ex. 22 can help you.)
- 3 Say in what way the British differ from the people living on the continent. (Lesson 14, ex. 17, ex. 18 can help you.)
- 4 We are sure you have a younger brother/sister or a friend. But we are not sure they have good table manners. Can you teach them? (Lesson 14, ex. 17, ex. 19 can help you.)

- 5 Say what people should do to keep fit. (Lesson 15, ex. 19, ex. 21, Lesson 17, ex. 14, ex. 19 can help you.)
- 6 Work in pairs. Choose a partner and ask him/her questions about:
- his/her health;
 - his/her last illness;
 - his/her last visit to the doctor.

Don't forget to change over. (Lesson 16, ex. 21 and Lesson 17, ex. 8, ex. 18 can help you.)

LET US READ

- 7 Read the following text and say why Mr Martin often went to see his doctor.

MR MARTIN

Mr Martin had never married. He lived alone in a small house in a village situated in the south of Wales. Mr Martin never felt lonely. He was very much interested in many different things. He tried to get as much information as possible about the United Kingdom, the Royal Family and its history.

He wanted to know what the government was doing about the lives of poor people in big industrial cities. Mr Martin studied law seriously and often had long talks about the problems of power in the country with his neighbour,¹ a former lawyer. He had very interesting plans to offer, plans how to make the work of Parliament better. But he was especially interested in the problems of health.

Mr Martin had a lot of knowledge about health and medicine. He led a regular life and was always very careful about what he ate and drank. He hardly ever went out when the weather was cold because he was always afraid that he would fall ill. He was afraid of getting some terrible illness.

So he often went to see his doctor whom he respected very much and whom he definitely believed. But the doctor was getting very tired of Mr Martin's regular visits and his imagined illnesses. In fact Mr Martin was a healthy man, he seldom

¹ neighbour ['neɪbə] — сосед



caught a cold, he never had a headache, earache or pains in the stomach. But he thought he had all the illnesses imaginable.

One day Mr Martin hurried into the doctor's office and told him he was sure he had some terrible illness which he had read about in the newspaper. He showed the doctor the paper.

The doctor read it carefully and then said: "I'm surprised, Mr Martin, that you think you have this illness. There are no signs that you have it. As it is written here, people don't know when they have this illness. There are no symptoms ['sɪmptəmz] and people usually feel very well. They don't cough or sneeze, they have no pains in the head or in any other part of the body, their pulse is normal ['nɔːml], so is their blood pressure. It doesn't hurt them to move, to breathe or to swallow. So, please, don't be silly. You shouldn't worry."

Mr Martin was offended. "But that's just how I feel, doctor. I don't suffer from all these things either."

- 8 Find and read out the sentences to describe the pictures.
- 9 Find and read out from the text all the words and word combinations referring to the topic "Health".
- 10 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer them.
- 11 Were any of your classmates absent from the lesson? Tell him/her in brief what the text is about. (See ex. 7.)



SPORTS AND GAMES

LESSON 19

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Express the same ideas using *ought to*.

EXAMPLE: You should examine these pictures carefully.
You ought to examine these pictures carefully.

1. You should keep to a fruit diet.
2. You should eat more dairy products.
3. You should definitely visit your granny every week.
4. You should take some cream, cottage cheese and butter to your grandparents.
5. You should take your little sister to the eye specialist.
6. You should clean the flat with the vacuum cleaner.

- 2 Say what the children told their mother yesterday.

EXAMPLE: *Fanny:* Jack was excited.
Fanny told her mother Jack had been excited.

Jim: Nelly has already recovered.

Bill: Caroline nodded to me when I saw her.

Jack: The picture fell from the wall 3 days ago.

Ann: The doctor examined my throat.

Fred: It hurt me to swallow.

Tom: We have bought the medicine.

John: We felt excited.

Sue: Join us!

- 3 Say what the children asked their teacher last week.

EXAMPLE: Carol: Where does the sun rise?

Carol asked the teacher where the sun rose.

Kate: When will we go to see the Houses of Parliament?

Boris: Did Jack play the violin at school?

Andrew: Who does the book belong to?

Steve: Where is Nick's bicycle?

George: Who protected the little girl?

Pam: What separates England from the continent?

- 4 Fill in the table:

		my
	him	
she		
it		
	us	
		your
	them	

- 5 Choose the right word.

1. Look! I've bought the books. Shall I give (*their, them*) to you?
2. Pete, I'm talking to (*you, your*). Where are (*you, your*) keys?
3. Ann's little cousin is playing the piano. She can play (*it, its*) well.
4. Do you see the boy near the blackboard? Do you know (*him, his*)? — I do. But I don't remember (*him, his*) name.
5. I'm not sure it is (*their, them*) problem.
6. This is my dog Rex. (*It, Its*) tail is black-and-white.

6 Use the right pronoun to complete the sentences.

1. I don't know these men. Do you know ... ?
2. Where is Tom? I want to speak to
3. We live in Wales. ... parents live with
4. Ann, have you done ... homework? Have ... finished ... yet?
5. I have bought nice fresh bread. Will you take ... out of the bag?
6. They are in the garden. But where are ... children?

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

I	— my	— mine
he	— his	— his
she	— her	— hers
it	— its	— its
we	— our	— ours
you	— your	— yours
they	— their	— theirs



- Whose book is this?
- It's my book.
- Are you sure it is yours?
- Yes, I am. It's mine.



- Whose bicycles are they?
- They are our bikes. They are ours.

7 Complete the sentences.

EXAMPLE: It's my washing machine. It is mine.

1. It is our village. It is
2. They are his puppies. They are

3. It is her violin. It is
4. They are our chrysanthemums. They are
5. It is your guitar. It is
6. They are their sculptures. They are

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

+

Future Indefinite

He **will go** to bed
 They **will read** to you
 She **will call** me
 We **shall buy** a new sofa

Present Indefinite

when he **comes** home.
 when you **are** in bed.
 if she **arrives**.
 if we **get** the money.

-

She **will go** to the doctor if she **doesn't get** better.
 We **shall be** surprised if he **doesn't protect** her.
 They **will go** to the stadium if it **doesn't rain**.
 I **will play** the guitar if he **is not** in.

8 Begin or complete the sentences.

- a)
 1. If it doesn't snow,
 2. When they finish their job,
 3. When we learn the poem,
 4. If we go to the cinema,
 5. If the weather is fine,
- b)
 1. I will go shopping.
 2. she will book a ticket.
 3. they will eat pancakes with caviar.
 4. he will explore the new land.
 5. they will continue their work.

9 Say what they will do when the lesson is over.

EXAMPLE: When the lesson is over, Nick will go to the cinema.



- 10 Say what you will do if it doesn't rain.

EXAMPLE: I will go swimming if it doesn't rain.

- 11 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words mean:

cricket ['kɪkɪt]
golf [ɡɒlf]
club [klʌb]
rugby ['rʌɡbi]
college ['kɒlɪdʒ]
match [mætʃ]

athletics [æθ'letɪks]
horse-riding ['hɔːsraɪdɪŋ]
climbing ['klaɪmɪŋ]
university [ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsɪti]
international [ˌɪntə'næʃnəl]
championship ['tʃæmpɪənʃɪp]

b) Look up the words in your vocabulary:

boat
boating
invent
probably
team

exist
lawn
widely
row
rowing

develop
spread
compete
competition
hold

c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words.

boat [bəʊt] (*n*): a boat — boats, to go in a boat. Every summer they travel along the Thames in a boat.

boating: My cousins are fond of boating. Boating is a popular sport in Britain.

to go boating: It is so pleasant to go boating early in the morning.

row [rəʊ] (*v*): row — rowed. 'To row' means to move through the water in a boat with oars.¹ We rowed across the lake. Can you row a boat?

rowing: to go in for rowing. Rowing is popular in many European countries. My elder brother is a sportsman. He goes in for rowing.

invent [ɪn'vent] (*v*): invent — invented. 'To invent' means to make or think of something for the first time. — Who invented the telephone? — Alexander Bell did. He invented the telephone in 1876. Radio was invented by A. Popov in 1895.

develop [dɪ'veləp] (*v*): develop — developed, to develop a business. The government should develop new industries. I'd like to develop this idea.

probably ['prɒbəbli] (*adv*): You will probably win the game. John probably told his father all about it, but I'm not sure. We'll probably go on a trip this summer.

spread [spred] (*v*): spread — spread — spread. 1. The news of the discovery spread quickly. If I tell you this secret, don't spread it. The fire soon spread through the whole village. 2. Spread jam on your bread.

widespread: a widespread illness, a widespread sport.

team [ti:m] (*n*): a team — teams. A 'team' is a group of people acting together in a game. A football team, a basketball team, a volleyball team, a hockey team. John is in the school cricket team.

compete [kəm'pi:t] (*v*): compete — competed. 'To compete' means to try to win. The two girls competed for the first prize.

competition [kəm'pi:tɪʃn] (*n*): a competition — competitions, an important competition.

¹ oars [ɔ:z] — весла

to be in competition with: He was in competition with 10 others. Our team was in competition with three others for the championship. George is going to take part in the swimming competition.

exist [ɪg'zɪst] (*v*): exist — existed. 'To exist' means to live or to be real. Many people believe that God exists. We cannot exist without air, food and warmth. Man cannot exist for long without water.

lawn [lɔ:n] (*n*): a lawn — lawns, a green lawn. A lawn is an area ['eəriə] of land covered with grass around the house. A lawn in front of the house. Lawn tennis is played on a lawn.

hold [həʊld] (*v*): hold — held — held. 'To hold' means to keep or to take in the hands or arms. If you hold my bag I will unlock the door. The girl was holding her father's hand. Hold your head up!

to hold a competition in smth: When did they hold a competition in boxing?

12 Read out the names of sports and games.

Competition, athletics, boating, climbing, mountain, probably, horse-riding, golf, ball, skating, rugby, row, team, volleyball, lawn tennis, cricket, basketball, skiing, hockey, develop, football, boat, compete, lawn, rowing.

13 Say it right. Make up as many true sentences as you can.

a) Radio	was invented	by A. Bell.
Football		in America.
The telephone		in England.
Fast food		by A. Popov.
b) Cricket	is spread	all over the world.
Boxing		in Britain.
Rugby		in Russia.
Hockey		in England.
Golf		
Football		
Skiing		

- 14 Say what game you will probably play next Monday.

EXAMPLE: I will probably play chess next Monday.

- 15 Name 5 or 6 widespread sports and games in Russia.

- 16 Use the following word combinations in the sentences of your own.

EXAMPLE: to develop one's body
A lot of exercises develop our bodies.

to develop a plan, to develop one's business, to develop one's ideas, to develop one's imagination, to develop a new industry

- 17 Fill in the words *boat* (*boating*), *row* (*rowing*), *team*, *college*, *international*, *competition*, *lawn*.

1. ... and ... are popular sports in Britain.
2. Our football ... took part in the ... last year.
3. There is a green ... in front of our cottage.
4. Where do you keep your fishing ...?
5. He goes in for sports and takes part in all ... competitions.
6. Can you ...?
7. Are you a member of your ... cricket team?

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 18 Listen to the poem "Selfish",¹ 58. Then read and learn it by heart.

SELFISH

(after Caroline Graham)

This is mine!
That's yours!
Don't touch mine!
Get your own.

¹ selfish ['selfɪʃ] — зѣд, эгоист

This is mine.
That's yours.
That's yours.
Hey, what are you doing?
What are you doing with that?
That's mine!
Hey, what are you doing?
What are you doing with that?
That's his!
Hey, what are you doing?
What are you doing with that?
That's hers!
What's mine is mine.
What's yours is yours.
What's his is his.
What's hers is hers.
What's ours is ours.
What's theirs is theirs.

LET US READ

19 Read the text and answer the question at its end.

POPULAR BRITISH SPORTS AND GAMES

The British people like everyone else like sports and games. But if they are asked to name their favourite sport they will probably name football, cricket and tennis, though many of them go in for such sports as golf and hockey, athletics and climbing, horse-riding and boating, rugby and rowing.

Britain invented and developed many of the sports and games which are now played all over the world. Football is one of them. Probably the most popular sport nowadays was first developed in England. It is spread all over the country — in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. Their national teams compete with each other every year. They take part in different competitions. The two best teams play in the Cup Final at Wembley Stadium in London. It is one of the most important

football matches of the year. National teams of England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland take part in European competitions and other international matches. There are many football clubs all over Britain.

Cricket is another popular summer sport. It is sometimes called the English national game. It is known that people played cricket in England as early as 1550. Many cricket clubs were founded in the 18th century. Nowadays this summer game, which is typically British, is played in schools, colleges and universities and in most towns and villages of Britain. Teams play weekly games from late April to the end of September. Cricket is a very long game, and quite dangerous. It is a slow game too. International cricket matches can last for 5 days. Cricket is not played only by men. Girls and women play this game too.

Boxing as a British sport is one of the oldest. It existed even in Saxon times. Golf was developed in Scotland and now is widely spread all over Britain. Tennis, or lawn tennis, is another popular game in Britain. It was first played in England in 1872 and the first championship at Wimbledon was in 1877. Nowadays every summer in June, the British hold their famous International Tennis Championship at Wimbledon, in west London.

Swimming, boating and sailing have always been popular in Britain and are enjoyed by thousands of people. But the British are less interested in skiing and skating, typically Russian types of sport. Can you explain why?

20 Read out the sentences to describe the pictures.





LET US TALK

- 21 Ask questions on the text for your classmates to answer.
- 22 Speak about: a) popular British sports and games; b) sports and games popular in Russia.

LET US WRITE

- 23 Express the following in English.

1) Если я буду чувствовать себя плохо, я пойду к врачу. 2) Когда мои родители вернутся, мы пойдем смотреть соревнования по гребле. 3) Если не будет дождя, мы будем играть в теннис на лужайке перед домом. 4) Если Ник будет дома в 6, мы посмотрим футбольный матч по телевизору вместе. 5) Когда папа придет домой, мы пообедаем и поедem на стадион. 6) Если наша команда будет много тренироваться, мы выиграем эти соревнования.

- 24 Use the right form of the pronoun to complete the sentences.

1) This is (*my, mine*) team. 2) The picture is (*my, mine*). 3) Is (*her, hers*) boat big or small? 4) (*Our, Ours*) skates are better than (*your, yours*). 5) She is an old friend of (*my, mine*). 6) Where are (*their, theirs*) children? 7) Is he a friend of (*your, yours*)?

25 Do ex. 1, ex. 2, ex. 3 and ex. 9 in writing.

26 Refer the words of ex. 27 to the right column.

Nouns Verbs Adverbs Adjectives Pronouns

27 Learn to write these words.

cricket, golf, athletics, horse-riding, climbing, club, college, university, international, rugby, boat, boating, to go boating, to row, rowing, to invent, to develop, probably, to spread (spread, spread), team, to compete, competition, to exist, lawn, to hold (held, held), mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Listening Comprehension, 59, text "You've Won"

Home Reading Lesson 18, text "From the History of Sport"

LESSON 20

LET US REVIEW

1 Look through the words and then read out the words in alphabetical order: beginning first with 'a', then with 'b', 'c', 'd', etc.

Boat, among, row, invite, develop, probably, rowing, spread, team, compete, exist, lawn, hold, cricket, competition, golf, club, rugby, college, boating, arrival, match, athletics, horse-riding, climbing, university, international, championship.

2 Name all sports and games you know.

3 Express the same ideas in another way.

EXAMPLE: This is my old boat.
This old boat is mine.

1. This is my book.
2. That is her bike.
3. Is this your money?
4. That is our dog, it is not their dog.
5. This is their house.
6. We've got two cars. Our car is white. Their car is red.

- 4 Look at the pictures and say whose things they are.

EXAMPLE: The spoons, fork and knives are Betty's.



- 5 Say it right. How many true sentences can you make up?

My uncles			boating.
My elder brother			rowing.
My friends	is		cricket.
My little sister	are	fond of	golf.
That boy			rugby.
The girl			horse-riding.
			climbing.
			this hockey team.

- 6 Say what you will do if the weather is fine (not less than 10 sentences).

EXAMPLE: If the weather is fine we shall go for a walk.

- 7 Look at the pictures and say that you are not sure, but think that these children go in for the following kinds of sport.

EXAMPLE: Probably, Nelly goes in for running.



- 8 Say when they were invented.

Cars
Spaceships
Radio
Telegraph
Telephone
Television
Computers

was/were

invented

in the 19th century.

in the 20th century.

- 9 Say what the government should develop.

The government should develop

new industries.
culture.
the economy.
business.
the food industry.
the film industry.

- 10** The Browns are in London. Say when they will go home.

EXAMPLE: Ted will go home after he visits the British Museum.

Ted	to visit the British Museum.
Fred	to buy return tickets.
Mr Brown	to finish their business.
Mrs Brown	to visit the National Gallery.
The Browns	to see the English Prime Minister.
Susie	to speak to the famous English professor.
	to play the final game of cricket.

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

I — myself	we — ourselves
you — yourself	you — yourselves
he — himself	they — themselves
she — herself	
it — itself	

Tom looked at **himself** in the mirror.
I'd like to know more about **you**. Tell me about **yourself**.
Mrs Grey is rather old. She sometimes talks to **herself**.
I am not angry with you. I am angry with **myself**.

11 Make the sentences complete using *myself*, *himself*, etc.

1. Be careful. Don't burn
2. Betty never thinks about other people, she only thinks about
3. When we are alone we sometimes talk to
4. He fell off his bike but didn't hurt
5. Fred and Sam! When you ride your bikes, be careful and look after

12 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

international [ˌɪntəˈnæʃnəl]	college ['kɒlɪdʒ]
football player	match [mætʃ]
practically ['præktɪkəlɪ]	student ['stjuːdənt]
sportsmen ['spɔːtsmən]	result [rɪ'zʌlt]

b) Look up the words in your vocabulary:

coach	follow	draw
train	following	punish
training	trouble (<i>n</i>)	punishment
excellent	trouble (<i>v</i>)	throw
receive	race	

c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words.

train [treɪn] (*v*): train — trained — trained. 'To train' means to teach or learn how to do something. We trained the dog to bark¹ when it wants to go out. Every morning Nick spends 2 hours training for the game. The man trained the team for the competition.

training ['treɪnɪŋ] (*n*): 'Training' is a course of special exercises, practice, food, etc.; to keep sportsmen healthy and fit

to be in/out of training: He has been out of training for 3 months.

coach [kəʊtʃ] (*n*): 'A coach' is a teacher or trainer (a person who trains sportsmen for games, competitions).

¹ to bark [bɑːk] — лаять

Mr Smith is the coach of our swimming team. His father is a baseball coach.

trouble ['trabl] (*v*): trouble — troubled — troubled. 'To trouble' means to worry. I am troubled by the news of my friend's illness. Does your headache still trouble you? May I trouble you for a glass of water? Don't trouble to meet me.

trouble (*n*): trouble — troubles. 'Trouble' is a difficult or dangerous situation. Will it be much trouble for you to do this? Did it give you much trouble? Life is full of troubles.

to get into trouble: Nick is a boy who always gets into trouble. Be careful! Don't get into trouble!

race [reis] (*n*): a race — races, to have a race, to run a race, to run a race with *smb*, to lose a race, to win a race. How often do they have boat races? Dan won the race because he is the best swimmer in the team.

excellent ['eksələnt] (*adj*): excellent work, excellent health, an excellent wife, 'Excellent' is very, very good. The teacher told Dick's parents that his work in arithmetic was excellent.

draw [drɔ:] (*n*): a draw — draws

to end in a draw: The game ended in a draw (neither side won). Did the basketball game end in a draw? Our football team has had five wins and two draws this season.

receive [ri'si:v] (*v*): receive — received — received. 'To receive' means to get. When did you receive the letter (news, telegram)? He received a good education.¹ The lake receives water from this river. Jack received a book for his birthday. I haven't received a letter from Jim recently.

to receive people (businessmen, teachers, guests): The host of the party received his guests at the door. When are you receiving the delegation from Britain?

punish ['pʌnɪʃ] (*v*): punish — punished — punished. 'To punish' means to make a person suffer for the wrong he has done. Careless drivers should be punished.

punishment ['pʌnɪʃmənt] (*n*): punishment — punishments.

¹ education [edjʊkeɪʃn] — образование

'Punishment' is the act of punishing. His punishment was very serious, he had to work in the garden for two hours.
follow [ˈfɒləʊ] (*v*): follow — followed — followed. 'To follow' means to go or come after. The boy trained his dog not to follow him across the busy street. Spring follows winter. Does Monday follow Sunday? You go first and I will follow you. Follow this road until you reach the church then turn left. To follow a story (a text). The students followed the story with interest. Do you follow me?
following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ] (*adj*): the following day (week, month). The child was sick in the evening, but on the following day he seemed quite well again. What are you doing the following week?
throw [θrəʊ] (*v*): throw — threw — thrown. Is it my turn to throw? He threw the ball a 100 metres. Throw me the ball. She threw off her clothes and jumped into the water.

13 Give it a name:

- to go or come after;
- to teach or learn how to do something;
- a person who trains sportsmen;
- to worry;
- a difficult or dangerous situation;
- very, very good;
- to get something;
- to make a person suffer for the wrong he has done;
- the act of punishing.

14 Think of the meaning of the following phrase. How can you say it in Russian?

Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you.

5 Answer the following questions using the new words and word combinations.

1. Who trains sportsmen for international competitions?
2. What do we call members of the football team?
3. What do sportsmen do to keep fit, to be in excellent form?
4. How does the game end if the result is 0:0?

5. What can a coach say to his sportsman if he hasn't done any training for a long time?
 6. What kind of student is a boy or girl if he (she) gets very, very good marks?
 7. What kind of competition do sportsmen have if two or more boats compete with each other?
 8. If you are a teacher, will you use any punishments? How will you punish your students?
- 16** A sportsman who plays football is a football player. What do we call a sportsman who:
- plays basketball?
 - plays volleyball?
 - plays cricket?
 - plays golf?
 - plays tennis?
 - plays rugby?
- 17** Make the sentences complete using: *trouble (n)*, *trouble (v)*, *receive (v)*, *follow (v)*, *following (adj)*.
1. Does your stomach still ... you?
 2. May I ... you for a cup of coffee?
 3. Do you know the ... people: Mary Kelley, Don Smith?
 4. What information have you ... ?
 5. Never ... such a bad example.
 6. When did you ... this letter?

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 18** Listen to the song "If It Snows", ☐ 60.

IF IT SNOWS

If it snows, if it snows,
 What'll you do? What'll you do?
 I'll go skiing if it snows,
 That's what I will do.

If it rains, if it rains,
What'll you do? What'll you do?
I'll stay at home if it rains,
That's what I will do.

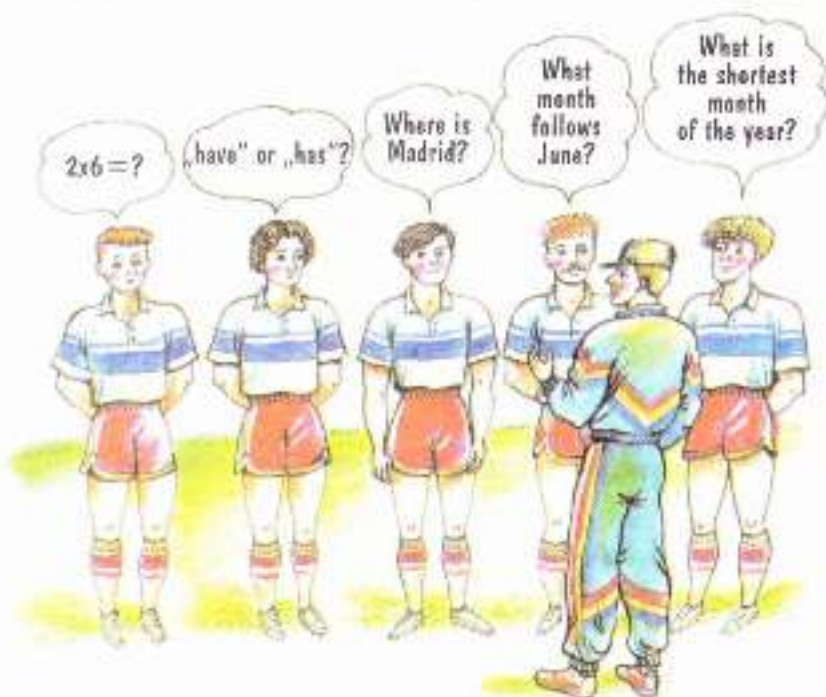
LET US READ

- 19 Read the text and say what is the right answer to the Professor's question and why the text is called "He Was Only Wrong by Two!"

HE WAS ONLY WRONG BY TWO!

Jack was the football coach at an American college. He always tried to find good football players for his team. Jack trained his players very well.

They were good at running, jumping, swimming, rowing and playing different games. They often took part in races and practically always won. All Jack's players were tall strong men,





excellent sportsmen and just nice people. They hardly ever gave him trouble and the college team was the best in their state. Regular training, keeping to a diet and a lot of exercises were very important for the sportsmen. They always followed the coach's advice and received good and excellent results in all home and international competitions and matches. They seldom lost a game, hardly ever ended matches in a draw. In fact they practically always won.

The only trouble with some of his football players was their poor knowledge of many school subjects because the sportsmen were often poor at maths, English, etc. and it was not always easy for them to become college students.

One day the coach brought an excellent young football player to the Professor of the college. The Professor had to ask the young player a few questions. The Professor chose very easy questions but the boy couldn't answer them. At last the Professor asked:

"Well, what's five times seven?¹"

The student thought for a long time and then answered: "Thirty-six."

¹ five times seven = 5×7 (пятью семь)

The Professor shook his head and looked at the coach. "It's impossible!" he said. "I don't want to punish your team. I understand he can throw a ball very well but, alas,¹ he doesn't know mathematics at all. He can't be a student."

But the coach seriously asked: "Oh, please, sir! Let him become a student. He was only wrong by two."

- 20 Read out the sentences to describe the pictures.
- 21 Put the sentences in a logical order and use them as a plan to retell the text.
1. The coach said the new student was only wrong by two.
 2. The coach's sportsmen had a very poor knowledge of all the school subjects.
 3. The coach had the best college football team in his state.
 4. The football players had regular training to keep fit.

LET US TALK

- 22 Pretend you are: **a)** the Professor; **b)** the coach; **c)** the new football player and retell the story.
- 23 Discuss the question if the Professor should take the new student into the college.
- 24 Choose a partner and talk on the following: "Sport in Our Life."

LET US WRITE

- 25 Use the following word combinations and write questions beginning with: *what, where, when, why, how, how often*.

To train regularly, to receive letters, a college coach, to punish the younger brother, to follow mother's advice, to trouble the Professor, to end in a draw, to become an excellent student.

¹ alas [ə'ləs] — увы

26 Express the following in English.

- 1) Если наш тренер придет в 5.15, мы начнем тренироваться вовремя.
- 2) Если мой друг уедет в деревню к своему двоюродному брату, он попадет в беду снова.
- 3) Если матч кончится вничью, пошли мне телеграмму.
- 4) Когда он придет на стадион, он будет играть в гольф.
- 5) Когда команда выиграет игру, она получит приз.
- 6) Когда начнется игра, он бросит мяч.

27 Write a short story about your favourite sport or game.

28 Learn to write these words.

to train, training, coach, trouble (to get into trouble), race, excellent, draw, to end in a draw, to receive, to punish, punishment, to follow, following, to throw (threw, thrown)

Listening Comprehension, □ 61, text "An Excellent Student"

Home Reading Lesson 19, text "Two Ways to Count to Ten"



SHOPPING

LESSON 21

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Say what you will buy or where you will go if you win (receive, have) a lot of money.

EXAMPLE: If I receive a lot of money, I will go travelling.

- 2 Make the following sentences complete.

EXAMPLE: I'll throw him a ball when he joins us.

1. I'll throw him a ball when
2. She will speak to her coach when
3. They will train regularly when
4. I won't trouble Mother when
5. We'll take part in the boat race when
6. Mrs Brown will punish Jim when
7. I'll follow your advice when

- 3 Say how the games ended.

EXAMPLE: The game of football ended in a draw.

game of football	0:0
game of cricket	0:0
game of rugby	0:0
game of basketball	0:0
game of volleyball	0:0

- 4 Look at the pictures and say what Mrs Green received the other day.



- 5 Say the things you have bought are really very, very good.

EXAMPLE: I have bought an excellent sweater.

- 6 Express the same idea in a different way. Follow the example.

EXAMPLE: The book belongs to me. It's mine.

1. The violin belongs to Fred.
2. The guitar belongs to him.
3. The piano belongs to Mrs Green.
4. The painting belongs to my granny.
5. The sculpture belongs to Roger.
6. The flute belongs to her.
7. The cups belong to us.

- 7 Say that people *always (never)* do the following action themselves.

EXAMPLE: Liz always cooks herself.

1. Liz always cooks
2. Bill never drives the car
3. Janet always cleans the carpet with the vacuum cleaner

4. Bob and Sam are small but they always write letters to their grandparents
5. The children always wash up
6. Colin never turns on TV

- 8 Say that you (Nelly, we, they) also like (do) the same.

EXAMPLE: Jack always trains in the morning. So does Kate.

1. Jack always trains in the morning. (*Kate*)
2. Pete can play rugby very well. (*We*)
3. Bob and Kate were in the City yesterday. (*Polly*)
4. Albert has done his homework. (*I*)
5. They got excellent marks. (*Ted*)
6. Caroline plays the flute badly. (*You*)
7. Alice has received a letter from him lately. (*Betty*)

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

Neither does she/do we.

Bill can't play the flute.
I am not tired.
We weren't at home at 3.
I haven't got her address.
They won't play golf.
He didn't train yesterday.
He doesn't buy dairy products at the supermarket.

Neither can John.
Neither are we.
Neither was she.
Neither has Ann.
Neither will we.
Neither did Jack.
Neither do I.

- 9 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

EXAMPLE: Ann can't cook. Neither can Rob.

1. ...		am	...
2. ...		is	...
3. ...		are	...
4. ...		was	...
5. ...	So	were	...
6. ...	Neither	do	...
7. ...		does	...
8. ...		did	...
		can	
		will	
		have	
		has	

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

We buy white bread and brown bread **at the baker's**.
 We buy flour, sugar, rice and salt **at the grocer's**.
 We buy meat (pork, beef), sausages **at the butcher's**.
 We buy fish **at the fishmonger's**.¹
 We buy fruit and vegetables **at the greengrocer's**.
 We buy dairy products (milk, cream, etc.) **at the dairy**.²
 We buy biscuits, cakes **at the confectionery**.³
 We buy sweets and chocolates **at the sweet shop**.

10 Answer the following questions.

1. What can you buy at the baker's?
2. What can you buy at the butcher's?
3. You buy sweets at the greengrocer's, don't you?
4. Where can you buy cottage cheese?
5. You can buy vegetables at the greengrocer's. What else can you buy there?
6. Where can you buy fish?

¹ at the fishmonger's ['ɪʃməŋɡəz] — в рыбном магазине (отделе)

² at the dairy ['deəri] — в молочном магазине (отделе)

³ at the confectionery [kən'fekʃənəri] — в кондитерской

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!



1. a **bottle** of milk (water, juice, oil)



2. a **can** of lemonade (pepsi, coca-cola)



3. a **packet** of tea (biscuits)



4. a **jar** of jam (honey, coffee)



5. a **tin** of fruit (meat)



6. a **bar** of chocolate



7. a **loaf** (loaves) of bread



8. a **bag** of sugar, flour



9. a **carton** of yoghurt, cream

10. a **pound** of bacon

11. a **kilo** of meat

- 11 Yesterday Mrs White went shopping. At the supermarket¹ she bought many things. What did she buy?

She bought:	— ... of cream	— ... of bread
	— ... of tomato ketchup	— ... of flour
	— ... of milk	— ... of tea
	— ... of soup	— ... of meat

LET US READ AND LEARN

- 12 Listen to the dialogues, ☞ 62. Read, learn them by heart and act them out.

AT THE GREENGROCER'S

Jane: And now we're going to buy some vegetables. Let's cross the road. There's the greengrocer's over there.

Greengrocer: Good morning, madam. What can I do for you?

Jane: I want a large cabbage,² please, and half a kilo of carrots.

Greengrocer: Yes, madam. Anything else?

Jane: Some fruit, please, six of those oranges and a kilo of these apples.

Greengrocer: Any grapes,³ madam?

Jane: No, nothing else, thank you.

(On their way to the grocer's.)

Jill: There is little flour left. Will you go to the grocer's and buy a bag of flour and some sugar, please?

Ann: Shall I also buy a bag of sugar?

Jill: Could you buy two and a packet of tea?

Ann: We haven't got any rice. What about salt?

Jill: There is a lot. But you can buy a bottle of vinegar⁴ and two bottles of oil. Is that OK?

- 13 These are the new words for you to learn.

¹ supermarket ['sjupə:mɑ:kə] — магазин самообслуживания

² a cabbage ['kæbiɪʃ] — кочан капусты

³ grapes [greɪps] — виноград

⁴ vinegar ['vɪnɪgə] — уксус

a) Guess what these words and word combinations mean:

bacon ['beɪkən]

rice [raɪs]

a sweet shop

to do some (the) shopping

sausages ['sɔ:sɪdʒɪz]

company ['kʌmpəni]

hopefully (hope + -ful + -ly)

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

pork

tie

piece

a bit

change

beef

wrap

fat

pay

kilo

cut

c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words.

piece [pi:s] (*n*): a piece — pieces, a piece of furniture, a piece of advice, a piece of paper, a piece of cake. There are pieces of broken glass all over the floor. How big piece of cake would you like? Let me give you a piece of advice.

pound [paʊnd] (*n*): 1. 'A pound' is a piece (unit) of money in Great Britain. — How much is it? — It is ten pounds. 2. A measure of weight.¹ Sugar was sold by the pound in Britain but most weights now are metric.

pay [peɪ] (*v*): pay — paid — paid, paying. 'To pay' is to give money for the goods bought. Did you pay 2 pounds for that book? I paid the money yesterday. You must pay me at once.

a bit [bɪt] (*adv*) (-a little): a bit tired. Wait a bit! That's a bit too much to pay. Your answer is a bit too long. Aren't we a bit early?

fat [fæt] (*adj*): fat — fatter — (the) fattest, a fat man, fat cheeks, fat meat. That man is not very fat. The child has got fat cheeks. I don't like fat meat. You'll get even fatter if you eat all those sweets. A fat cat sat on a mat² and ate a fat rat.³

a measure ['meʒə] of weight [weɪt] — мера веса (= 450 г)

mat [mæt] — половичок, коврик

rat [ræt] — крыса

pork [pɔ:k] (*n*): 'Pork' is the meat of a pig used as food. How often does your granny cook pork? My grandparents don't like pork.

cut [kʌt] (*v*): cut — cut — cut, cutting. 'To cut' means to divide. Laura cut the pie into six pieces. I cut my foot. We have to cut the grass today. Don't cut your fingers on the broken glass. This knife won't cut. The boys cut the cake in two and ate half each.

wrap [ræp] (*v*): wrap — wrapped — wrapped, wrapping, to wrap something. Did you put the book in a box and wrap it up in brown paper? They offered to wrap the shoes in the shop, but I wanted to wear them at once.

beef [bi:f] (*n*): 'Beef' is the meat of a cow used as food. Beefsteak ['bi:fsteɪk] is a thick piece of beef for frying.

tie [taɪ] (*v*): tie — tied — tied, tying. Is your little brother learning how to tie his own shoes? He tied his dog to the door.

tie (*n*): I have bought a tie as a birthday present for John.

change [tʃeɪndʒ] (*n*): 'Change' is notes,¹ coins given to you if you pay more (the difference between the price of things bought and the money you've paid). Can you give me change for a £1 note? I have no small change. If you buy something that costs three pence and pay for it with a pound, you'll get ninety-seven pence change.

14 Read the question in A, choose and read aloud the right answer in B.

A

1. Does your mother often buy pork?
2. Who usually goes to the baker's in your family?
3. What do people buy at the fishmonger's?
4. Does your brother like sausages?
5. That sportsman is very fat, isn't he?

B

Five pounds and fifty pence.
Of course, he could.
They usually buy two loaves of bread.
Yes, he does.
Yes, she does. We like fried pork for dinner.
My sister does.
Oh, yes, he is.
They buy fish, caviar and

¹ notes [nəʊts] — банкноты (бумажные деньги)

6. How many loaves of bread do they buy every day?
7. How much did she pay for that nice piece of beef?
8. Could the grocer give her the change?

other things at the fishmonger's.

- 15 Make up as many true sentences as you can. Use the following:

- That's a bit too much to pay for
- I paid ... pounds for that
- He wrapped ... in ... paper.

EXAMPLE: That's a bit too much to pay for the caviar.
I paid 2 pounds for that toy.
He wrapped the book in brown paper.

- 16 Look at the pictures and say what Nelly is cutting.



- 17 Read the text and say what the butcher thought of Mary Poppins's visit.

AT THE BUTCHER'S

Mary Poppins is doing some shopping with the children. She has a long shopping list. They have already been to the grocer's and have bought sugar, bacon, salt and rice. They have also been to the fishmonger's and have bought fish for supper. They have been to the baker's and have bought two loaves of white bread. Now Mary finds she will have to go to the butcher's to buy some meat.

"Two pounds of sausages, please, and some best pork," said Mary Poppins. "Sorry, we are in a hurry."

The butcher was a fat friendly man. He was also large and red, rather like one of his own sausages.



"In a hurry," he said to Mary Poppins. "Well, that's a pity! I hoped you had come to talk a bit. We, butchers, you know, like a bit of company. But if you are in a hurry, of course... Two pounds, did you say? Right." And he cut off some sausages and wrapped them up first in white and then in brown

paper. "And I have a very nice piece of pork here. Have a look."

"That looks very good. How much is it?"

"Well, four pounds. So, that comes to eight pounds with the sausages. Is that all right?"

"Yes, thank you."

"Anything else?" he said hopefully. "Maybe some beef?"

"Not today," said Mary Poppins.

The man tied up the parcel and gave it to her.

"Bad weather," he said.

"Don't believe we're going to get any summer at all," answered Mary Poppins. She paid the money and got the change, then they went out of the shop.

18 Ask 6 questions on the text.

19 Read the talk between the butcher and Mary Poppins in the reported speech.

20 Read out the sentences from the text to describe:

- the butcher;
- the talk about the weather.

LET US TALK

21 Say what shops Mary Poppins visited that day and what she had bought.

22 Think of a dialogue between:

- a) Mary Poppins and the grocer;
- b) Mary Poppins and the fishmonger;
- c) Mary Poppins and the baker.

23 Say when you last went shopping, where you went and what you bought.

LET US WRITE

- 24 Do ex. 2, ex. 3 in writing.
- 25 Do ex. 7, 8, 9 (5-6 sentences) in writing.
- 26 Express the following in English.
- 1) Он храбро защищался. 2) Неожиданно она увидела себя в зеркало. 3) Он очень маленький. Он не может одеваться сам. 4) Она всегда говорит только о себе. 5) По утрам я готовлю завтрак сама. 6) Я видела это сама. 7) Я видела его самого.
- 27 Describe your last visit to the sweet shop. Use your imagination.
- 28 Learn how to write these words.

piece, pound, to pay (paid, paid), a bit, pork, fat, to cut (cut, cut), to wrap (wrapped, wrapped), beef, to tie, change

Listening Comprehension, □ 63, text "A Laconic Answer"
Home Reading Lesson 20, text "A Trip to Britain"

LESSON 22

LET US REVIEW

- 1 Say where you usually buy: *pork, bread, vegetables, beef, butter, milk, sweets, meat, cheese, fish.*

EXAMPLE: I usually buy pork at the butcher's.

- 2 Yesterday your mother went shopping.

a) She bought a bottle of oil, a loaf of bread, a can of coca-cola, a packet of tea, a bar of chocolate, a tin of meat, a jar of jam. Say where she bought all these things.

EXAMPLE: Mother bought a bottle of oil at the grocer's.

b) But she forgot to buy something. Ask her about it.

EXAMPLE: Did you forget to buy a bottle of juice?

- 3 How many sentences can you make, using the words: *fat, a bit, cut, wrap, piece, pound, pay, change*? Say them for your classmates to agree or disagree.

EXAMPLE: P₁: That cat is very fat.
P₂: That's right. It is very fat.

- 4 Pretend you are a teacher. Ask your classmates where and what they usually buy.

EXAMPLE: Where do you usually buy sweets?
What do you usually buy at the fishmonger's?

- 5 Give Miss Maple's answers to the baker's questions.

Baker: Good afternoon, madam. What can I do for you?

Miss Maple:

Baker: Brown bread or white bread?

Miss Maple:

Baker: How many loaves would you like?

Miss Maple:

Baker: Shall I wrap them up or put them in a plastic bag?

Miss Maple:

- 6 Now pretend that one of you is a baker, the other is Miss Maple. Act out the conversation. Don't forget to change over.

- 7 Think of 2 or 3 more questions which the baker could ask Miss Maple.

- 8 Read the example. Complete the sentences with the pronouns that rhyme with the noun before them.

EXAMPLE: This sign is
This sign is mine.

1. Those flowers are
2. Those doors are
3. These teddy bears are
4. These furs are
5. That quiz¹ is

LET US LEARN

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

One and ones in place of **countable** nouns.

Don't use that knife! Use this clean **one**.

This book is green, that **one** is red.

I don't want to wear my old shoes. I want to wear my new **ones**.

The children I like to teach are the **ones** who like to learn.

We don't use **one** in place of an **uncountable** noun. In this case we repeat the **noun** or use **no noun** at all.

Don't use that **milk**. Use this **fresh milk**.

Don't put that **butter** in the porridge. Use this **fresh**.

9 Use *one* or *ones* where possible.

1. Which shirts would you like to see? — The ... on the second shelf.²
2. Which shoes do you like best? — The red
3. Which computer do you use? — The ... in the central office.
4. Pour away³ some dirty water and get some clean

¹ a quiz [kwiz] — проверочная работа

² shelf [ʃelf] — полка

³ pour away [ə'weɪ] — вылей

5. I think my parents will sell their old car and buy a new ...
 6. Please pass me that plate. — Which ...?
 7. Which jeans are you going to buy? — The most expensive ...

10 These are the new words for you to learn.

a) Guess what the following words mean:

a supermarket [ˈsju:pə,mɑ:kɪt], ready-made clothes

b) Look up the following words in your vocabulary:

store	pure	cotton
cost	department	wool
blanket	necessary	woollen
towel	sheet	
pillow	price	

c) Read the phrases and sentences to know how to use the words.

store [stɔ:] (*n*): a store — stores. 'A store' is a place where goods¹ are sold. A store is a large shop. A clothing store, a furniture store, a grocery store. Where did Mother go? She went to the clothing store. Jack walked into a store to buy a hat.

department [dɪˈpɑ:tment] (*n*): a department — departments. 'A department' is a separate part. 1. The English department at school will have three new teachers this autumn. Is the police department part of the city government? 2. In a very big shop there are numerous departments — the food department, the men's clothing department, the grocery department, etc.

a department store is a large shop with many departments for different kinds of goods. Where is the nearest department store?

cost [kɒst] (*v*): cost — cost — cost. A motorcar costs a great deal of money. I can't buy it; it costs too much. This cost me 1000 pounds. How much does it cost you

¹ goods [gudz] — товар, товары

to keep a car? It will cost you a lot of money to fly to Paris. Carelessness may cost you your life. How much does it cost? It costs a lot.

price [praɪs] (*n*): a price — prices. 'Price' is a sum of money for which a thing is offered, sold or bought. High price, low price. What price did you pay for the house? What is the price of this suit? Are eggs sold at a high price? Prices are going up.

necessary ['nesɪsəri] (*adj*): necessary — more necessary — (the) most necessary. — What is necessary for good health? — Proper food and rest,¹ I think. Sleep is necessary for health. It is not necessary for you to come to school on Sundays. It is a day off.

cotton ['kɒtn] (*n*): Cotton is used to make cloth.² Cotton clothes, cotton oil, cotton goods.

blanket ['blæŋkɪt] (*n*): a blanket — blankets. Blankets are used on beds to keep people warm. Ted's blanket is always on the floor when he sleeps. I haven't got a warm blanket.

sheet [ʃi:t] (*n*): a sheet — sheets. 'A sheet' is a large piece of cotton cloth. Put clean sheets on the bed. A person usually sleeps with one sheet under and another over him. We've got ten cotton sheets.

towel ['taʊəl] (*n*): a towel — towels, a clean towel, to dry something with/on a towel. Her towel is always clean. Dry yourself with a towel! Dry your hands on the towel.

pillow ['pɪləʊ] (*n*): a pillow — pillows. Pillows are used to put one's head on when resting or sleeping. A soft pillow, a hard pillow, a small pillow. Pillows in Britain and Russia are different.

wool [wʊl] (*n*): 'Wool' is the soft hair of the sheep and some other animals. — Where do you get wool from? — We get it from Australia and Scotland. When people have backache they often wear wool next to the skin.³

woollen ['wʊlən] (*adj*): Woollen things are made of wool. Woollen blankets, a woollen coat, a woollen sweater. Have

¹ rest [rest] — отдых

² cloth [klɒθ] — ткань

³ skin [skɪn] — кожа (человека)

you got a red woollen coat? He doesn't like to sleep under a woollen blanket.

pure [pjʊə] (*adj*): pure — purer — the purest, pure water, pure milk. I bought a tie of pure silk. Her dress is made of pure wool.

11 Give it a name:

- things which are made of wool;
- something that is used on beds to keep people warm;
- a large shop;
- a sum of money for which a thing is sold;
- the soft hair of the sheep;
- a large shop with many departments;
- something that is used to cover a bed;
- something that is used to put one's head on;
- water and only water.

12 Make up as many true sentences as you can.

It is/isn't necessary for	me	to come here	on Sunday.
	you	to go shopping	
	them	to do the shopping	
	her	to go there by car	on Saturday.
	him	to pay for it	
	us	to receive money	
		to train this team	
		to buy it	

13 Complete the following sentences:

a) What's the price of

EXAMPLE: What's the price of this red blouse?

b) It will cost you a lot of money

EXAMPLE: It will cost you a lot of money to buy a new TV set.

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

British Money

There are a *hundred pence* (p [pi:]) in a *pound*.

COINS



- a 50 p coin = fifty pence or 50 p
- a 20 p coin = twenty pence or 20 p
- a 10 p coin = ten pence or 10 p
- a 5 p coin = five pence or 5 p
- a 2 p coin = two pence or 2 p
- a 1 p coin = one pence or 1 p
- a one pound coin = one (a) pound
- a two pound coin = two pounds
- a five pound coin = five pounds

NOTES

- a 50 pound note = fifty pounds = £50
- a 20 pound note = twenty pounds = £20
- a 10 pound note = ten pounds = £10
- a 5 pound note = five pounds = £5



£5.80 = five *pounds* eighty (*pence*) or five eighty
 £1.25 = one *pound* twenty-five or one twenty-five
 13 *p* = thirteen *pence*

LOOK, READ AND REMEMBER!

American Money

There are a *hundred pennies* = *cents* (*c*) in a *dollar*.

COINS



- a 25 *cent* coin = a *quarter* = 25 *pennies* (*cents*)
- a 10 *cent* coin = a *dime* = 10 *pennies* (*cents*)
- a 5 *cent* coin = a *nickel* = 5 *pennies* (*cents*)
- a 1 *cent* coin = 1 *penny* (*cent*)

NOTES



a 100 dollar note = a hundred dollars = \$100

a 50 dollar note = fifty dollars = \$50

a 20 dollar note = twenty dollars = \$20

a 10 dollar note = ten dollars = \$10

a 5 dollar note = five dollars = \$5

a 1 dollar note = one dollar = \$1

\$20.75 = twenty dollars seventy-five cents or twenty seven and a half

\$7.80 = seven dollars eighty cents or seven and four fifths

14 Look at the pictures in "Look, Read and Remember!" and name British and American coins and notes which you see there.

15 What is a name for:

- a) a 25 cent coin;
- b) a 5 cent coin;
- c) a 10 cent coin.

16 Say:

£1.35	£8.88	£4.35	10 p	2 p	45 p
\$20.40	\$89	\$51.30	15 c	21 c	55 c

- 17 Look at the pictures and say what their prices are.

EXAMPLE: The dress costs twenty-five pounds.



- 18 Complete the questions and answer them.

1. How many ... are there in a pound?
2. How many ... are there in a dime?
3. How many ... are there in a dollar?
4. How many ... are there in a twenty pound note?
5. How many ... are there in a nickel?
6. How many ... are there in a quarter?
7. How many ... are there in a hundred dollar note?

LET US READ

- 19 Read the text and say what Mrs Morrison bought for her husband.

AT SELFRIDGE'S¹

"I have some shopping to do. Would you like to come to Selfridge's with me?" Mrs Morrison asked the girls that afternoon.

¹ Selfridge's — a large department store in Oxford Street, London, especially famous for its food department

The White Sale¹ was on at Selfridge's, the big store in Oxford Street. Mrs Morrison wanted to buy a blanket, a pair of sheets and some towels.

She bought the towels first. "These are a bargain,"² said the shop assistant. "The usual price is 11 pounds for six, the White Sale price is 9." Mrs Morrison also bought a pair of cotton sheets and a blanket of pure Scotch wool, but no pillows.

"Shall we help you carry the things you've bought?" Collette asked. "No, that won't be necessary. If they send them tomorrow, I'll get them this week." "Now let's go to the ready-made clothes department and look at that skirt, I told you about," Mrs Morrison said to Jean. "If you like it and if it suits you, you can have it; you need one for school."

Jean liked the skirt. "How much does it cost?" she asked. It cost 8 pounds, which was not very expensive, but they did not have her size. "We'll be able to get it for you in about ten days' time," said the shop assistant.

Then Mrs Morrison chose a silk [silk] tie for her husband — next Friday would be his birthday — and she bought a pair of gloves for herself.

Then the three of them went to the food department and bought some food for five o'clock tea.



20 Answer the questions.

1. What is "Selfridge's"?
2. Where is this store situated?
3. What is the "White Sale"?
4. What did Mrs Morrison want to buy?
5. What was the price of the towels?
6. What kind of sheets did she buy?
7. When will Mrs Morrison get all she has bought?

¹ the White Sale — a sale of towels, sheets, etc.

² a bargain ['bɑ:gn] — сделка (покупка с выгодой)

8. Could the girl buy a skirt? Why?
9. What did Mrs Morrison buy for herself?

- 21 Give a short summary of the text.

LET US TALK

- 22 Imagine that you are at Selfridge's with Mrs Morrison. Tell us what you would like to buy there and why.
- 23 Work in pairs. Think of your conversation with the shop assistant at Selfridge's. Act out this conversation. Then change over.
- 24 Tell us in a few words about your last visit to a department store or a supermarket. Say what you bought there, what the prices were, how much money you spent there.

LET US WRITE

- 25 Do ex. 9, ex. 12, ex. 13 in writing.
- 26 Write a few words about your last visit to a store (a department store, a supermarket, any shop).
- 27 Learn to write these words.

store, department (department store), to cost (cost, cost), price, necessary, cotton, blanket, sheet, towel, pillow, wool, woollen, pure

Listening Comprehension, ☐ 64, text "Mrs Green or Mrs Brown"

Home Reading Lesson 21, text "What Is Shakespeare?"

LESSON 23

Review 3

LET US TALK

- 1 Let's play "A Boasting Game": P_1 says what he/she (his/her friends, relatives, etc.) can do himself/herself, etc.; P_2 expresses his/her doubt; P_3 disagrees with P_1 .

EXAMPLE: P_1 : I can make a vacuum cleaner myself.
 P_2 : Can you really make a vacuum cleaner yourself?
 P_3 : You can't make a vacuum cleaner yourself.

- 2 Say what sports and games you (your friends, relatives) will play if the weather is not bad.

EXAMPLE: If the weather is not bad my classmates will play football.

- 3 We are sure you know something about popular British sports and games. Please say a few words about them.
- 4 And now say what you know about Russian popular sports and games.
- 5 Work in pairs. Ask each other questions (and answer them) about what shops you will go to and what you will buy if you go to Paris.
- 6 Describe your last visit (with your mum) to a department store.

7 Read the text and say what you think of Jim.

THE REAL PRICE

Jim was a fourteen-year-old boy who was fond of sports. In fact, he was the best football player at school, but he also skated well, was good at boating, rowing and swimming and went in for jumping and running. He always took part in different school matches and competitions and probably was the cleverest sportsman in his team. He was also inventive.¹ The following story proves it.

One day Jim walked into a store which had a sign outside "Second-hand clothes bought and sold."²

Jim was carrying an old pair of jeans. He asked the shop assistant of the store, "How much will you give me for these?"



¹ inventive [m'ventiv] — изобретательный

² "Second-hand clothes bought and sold" — «Скупка и продажа поношенной одежды»

The man looked at the jeans and then said: "Two dollars." He was not polite at all and it was clear he was not much interested in the jeans. Jim looked at the shelves full of pillows and towels, woollen sweaters and silk shirts and then said: "What! I am surprised. I thought they cost more, ... 5 or 6 dollars for example." "No," said the man. "They are not worth a cent more than¹ two dollars."

"Are you sure?" asked Jim.

"Very sure," said the man.

"Well," said Jim taking some money out of his bag. "Here's your money. These jeans were hanging² outside your store with the price tag that said \$6.50, but I thought it was too much money. So before paying I decided to come in and to make sure how much they really cost. Thank you. I know the real price now. So will you wrap them for me?"

He saw the shop assistant wrap and tie his jeans, took the change and with the jeans he had bought he left the store. The surprised shop assistant didn't know what to say.

8 Read out the sentences to describe Jim.

9 Read out what the author of the text says about the shop assistant.

10 Tell Jim's story in a few words.

¹ are not worth a cent more than — не стоят ни на цент больше, чем

² hang [hæŋ] — висеть

REFERENCE GRAMMAR¹

THE NOUN

Имя существительное — это такая часть речи, которая обозначает лицо, предмет и отвечает на вопросы *кто?* *что?* Существительные могут быть исчисляемыми и неисчисляемыми.

§ 1. Исчисляемые имена существительные имеют два числа: единственное и множественное (a cup — cups, a dog — dogs). В единственном числе подобные имена существительные всегда употребляются с артиклем *a/an* или *the*.

There is a pen in the bag.

The pen is new.

§ 2. В восклицательных предложениях, начинающихся с *what*, подобные имена существительные всегда употребляются с неопределенным артиклем.

What a wonderful emblem!

What a sweet lily!

Исчисляемые существительные во множественном числе в таких предложениях с артиклем не употребляются.

What tall trees!

What sweet toys!

Неисчисляемые существительные в таких предложениях также употребляются без артикля.

What deep snow!

What fresh air!

§ 3. Имена существительные *weather, advice, information, knowledge, progress, money, news* в английском языке являются неисчисляемыми. Несмотря на то что в русском языке

¹ Справочник содержит новый грамматический материал, используемый в учебнике V класса. Основные сведения о частях речи, структуре предложения и т. д. смотри в соответствующих разделах учебников для III и IV классов.

эти существительные могут стоять в форме единственного и множественного числа (*advice* — совет/советы; *information* — информация/сведение/сведения; *knowledge* — знание/знания; *progress* — достижение/достижения; *news* — новость/новости), в английском языке эти существительные не употребляются в форме множественного числа, перед ними не используется неопределенный артикль, согласуются они с глаголом в единственном числе и заменяются местоимением *it*.

It is good advice. I will follow it.

What sad information!

That is good news. Tell me more about it.

Слово *hair* — волосы также относится к этой категории имен существительных, однако в современном английском языке имеются довольно редко употребляемые формы *a hair* — волосок, *hairs* — волоски.

a) *My sister's hair is beautiful. It is dark and long.*

b) *Sorry, there are some hairs on the plate.*

§ 4. Имена существительные могут образовываться от имен прилагательных при помощи суффикса *-th*.

warm (теплый) — *warmth* (тепло)

long (длинный) — *length* (длина)

strong (сильный) — *strength* (сила)

wide (широкий) — *width* (ширина)

§ 5. С именами существительными, обозначающими названия языков *English, French, Indian, Chinese*, артикль не употребляется. Однако если в наименование включается имя существительное, то название языка содержит определенный артикль: *the English language, the German language*.

§ 6. С именами существительными, обозначающими национальность (одно лицо), употребляется неопределенный артикль: *a Russian, an American, an Englishman*. Однако для обозначения коллективного названия нации часто употребляется определенный артикль: *the English* — англичане, *the French* — французы, *the Chinese* — китайцы.

THE ADJECTIVE

Имя прилагательное — это такая часть речи, которая обозначает признак, качество предмета и отвечает на вопрос *какой? который?* В предложении имена прилагательные выступают чаще всего в качестве определения (a red book) или именной части составного именного сказуемого. (The boy is tall. He feels bad.)

§ 7. При постановке вопросов к имени прилагательному (типа *Какой язык ты учишь? Какой твой любимый цвет?*) употребляется вопросительное местоимение **what**.

What language are you learning?

What is your favourite colour?

Однако, если поставленный вопрос содержит как бы выбор (какой — *этот* или *тот?*) из ограниченного числа предметов, употребляется **which**.

Which car is yours — the green one or the red one?

§ 8. Имена прилагательные могут образовываться от имен существительных при помощи суффикса -y, при этом значение вновь образованного прилагательного — «обладающий качеством данного объекта»:

cloud + -y = cloudy — *облачный*

rain + -y = rainy — *дождливый*

salt + -y = salty — *соленый*

THE PRONOUN

Местоимение — это такая часть речи, которая указывает на лицо, предметы, их признаки, количество, но не называет их. Местоимения имеют несколько разрядов.

Личные: I (me), you, he (him), she (her), it, we (us), they (them).

Притяжательные: my, your, his, her, its, our, their (mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs).

Возвратные: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

Указательные: this — these; that — those; such.

Вопросительные: who, what, whose, which, etc.

Неопределенные: **some, any, somebody, someone, something, anybody, anyone, anything, one.**

Отрицательные: **no, none, nobody, no one, nothing, neither.**

Обобщающие: **all, every, everybody, everything, both, either, other, another, each.**

§ 9. Вы уже знакомы с притяжательными местоимениями (*possessive pronouns*), когда они играют роль определения при существительных: **my book, his dog, our flat**. Однако притяжательные местоимения имеют еще одну форму, которая употребляется самостоятельно. Это независимая, или абсолютная, форма притяжательных местоимений:

- a) **my book** — the book is **mine**
his dog — the dog is **his**
her hat — the hat is **hers**
- b) Our flat is **big**, **yours** is bigger.
Your house is smaller than **ours**.
Give me **your** pen, please. **Mine** won't write.

§ 10. Возвратные местоимения (*reflexive pronouns*). Возвратные местоимения образуются путем прибавления элементов **-self** (единственное число) и **-selves** (множественное число) к личным местоимениям в объектном падеже (**him, her, it, them**) или притяжательным местоимениям (**my, our, your**).

<i>Единственное число</i>	<i>Множественное число</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------

myself	ourselves
yourself	yourselves
himself	themselves
herself	
itself	

I saw it **myself**. Я видел это сам.

Do it **yourself**! Сделай это сам.

Do it **yourselves**! Сделайте это сами.

They said it **themselves**. Они сами это сказали.

He is looking at **himself** in the mirror. Он смотрит на себя в зеркало.

Don't cut **yourself**! Не порежься.

Don't hurt **yourself**! Не ушибись.

§ 11. Неопределенное местоимение **one** — *некто, кто-то* имеет форму множественного числа — **ones** — *любые, всякие*. Это местоимение часто употребляется вместо имени существительного, упомянутого ранее, чтобы его не повторять.

Ann has got a grey kitten, and I have got a white **one**.

These are the recommended books. Which **ones** have you read?

Местоимение **one** на русский язык обычно не переводится.

§ 12. Для постановки вопросов типа *Кто из вас ...? Кто из них ...?* употребляются структуры **Which of you ...? Which of them ...?**

Which of you has passed the exam? Кто из вас сдал экзамен?

Ho: — **Who** lives in London? Кто живет в Лондоне? — Mr Green does. Господин Грин.

THE VERB

Глаголом называется часть речи, которая обозначает действие (состояние). В английском языке имеется четыре группы видо-временных форм:

1) группа неопределенных времен — **indefinite (simple) tenses**; 2) группа продолженных времен — **continuous (progressive) tenses**; 3) группа совершенных времен — **perfect tenses**; 4) группа совершенных длительных времен — **perfect continuous tenses**.

Все эти грамматические времена бывают настоящими, прошедшими или будущими.

Многие видо-временные формы глагола — это сложные формы, которые образуются при помощи вспомогательных глаголов (**be, do, have, shall/will**). Вспомогательные глаголы не имеют собственного значения, они лишь указывают на время совершения действия, лицо, число.

§ 13. Очень важно помнить, что глаголы **to be, to have, to do** могут употребляться и как смысловые глаголы и как вспомогательные.

- 1) Nick is at home.
Yesterday we **were** in the park.
(to be — *смысловой глагол*)
Nick is riding a bike.
The letters **were** written yesterday.
(to be — *вспомогательный глагол*)
- 2) I have a mother.
He **had** a farm 3 years ago.
(to have — *смысловой глагол*)
I **have** already read the book.
He said he **had** seen the film.
(to have — *вспомогательный глагол*)
- 3) She **does** it every summer.
When are you going **to do** the work?
(to do — *смысловой глагол*)
When **does** she have breakfast?
I **don't** want to take any pictures.
(to do — *вспомогательный глагол*)

§ 14. Глагол **to have** со значением *иметь, обладать* в современном английском языке чаще всего выступает в виде структуры **have got/has got**: I have got a pen (реже I have a pen). При образовании отрицательных предложений наиболее частотными структурами являются: He **hasn't got** a pen и He **doesn't have** a pen. (Структура He **hasn't** a pen употребляется крайне редко.) Однако когда в предложении есть отрицательное местоимение **no**, употребляется просто форма **has/have**.

I **have no** sister.
He **has no** friends.
They **had no** work to do yesterday.

§ 15. Глагол **to be**, выступая в качестве глагола-связки, употребляется для построения составного именного сказуемого:

She **is** ill.
The rose **is** sweet.
The orange **is** bitter.

§ 16. Глаголы **to taste, to sound, to feel, to smell** также выступают в качестве глагола-связки при образовании составного именного сказуемого.

I feel bad, I don't feel well. Я чувствую себя плохо, а не хорошо.

The rose smells sweet. Роза сладко пахнет.

The orange tastes bitter. Апельсин горек на вкус.

При этом в русском варианте, как видно из вышеприведенных примеров, в предложениях имеется простое глагольное сказуемое, и оно определяется наречием.

§ 17. Глагол **to like** в современном английском языке в предложениях типа: *Я люблю, когда идет дождь. Мне нравится, когда на улице солнечно* требует после себя дополнения **it**.

I like it when it rains.

I like it when it is sunny outdoors.

§ 18. Для описания действия, происходящего в момент речи, употребляется настоящее продолженное время (**the present continuous tense**).

Look! Ann is wearing such a funny hat.

Однако целый ряд глаголов в этом времени обычно не употребляется. К этим глаголам относятся глаголы: **to hear, to see, to love, to wish, to want, to hate, to prefer, to know, to understand, to forget, to seem, to believe, to remember, to recognize, to feel**.

He knows this fact.

Do you see that tree over there?

При этом, однако, следует иметь в виду, что глагол **to feel** при описании самочувствия может употребляться как в **present indefinite**, так и в **present continuous**:

How are you feeling today?

He doesn't feel well.

§ 19. **The present perfect tense** часто используется для описания действия, которое происходило в прошлом и до сих пор продолжается.

She has always lived in that street. Она всегда жила на этой улице (и сейчас живет).

Очень часто время **present perfect** используется также для описания состояния, которое имело место быть в прошлом и продолжается в настоящий момент.

We have always been proud of you. Мы всегда гордились вами (и сейчас гордимся).

I have always wanted to visit London. Мне всегда хотелось побывать в Лондоне (и сейчас хочется).

§ 20. Способы выражения будущего времени.

В английском языке существуют несколько способов того, как можно рассказать о будущем действии, событии. Для этого употребляются:

1) **the future indefinite tense** — для выражения однократного или повторяющегося действия в будущем.

We shall meet and talk one of these days.

Will you phone me every week.

Слова и словосочетания, которые обычно указывают на это время: **tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week/month/year, etc., in a week/month/year** (через неделю/месяц/год), **one of these days** (на днях).

Часто это время употребляется, если мы решаем что-то сделать в момент речи.

I like this dictionary. I will buy it.

What would you like to have? I'll take chicken soup, I think.

2) оборот **to be going to** — *собираться сделать что-то* — для описания запланированного действия, для выражения намерения говорящего. Мы собираемся совершить действие и сообщаем о том, что хотим исполнить то, что мы решили сделать заранее.

I am going to watch a film on television.

Is she going to travel by car?

Этот же оборот употребляется для описания какого-то события в будущем, если говорящему ясно, что оно обязательно произойдет.

Look at the sky! It's going to rain.

— **Is it going to snow?** — **I hope not.**

3) **the present continuous tense** — для описания запланированного действия, которое произойдет в ближайшем будущем.

What are you doing next Monday?

We are having a party tomorrow night.

Очень часто подобным образом употребляются глаголы движения (**to come, to leave, to arrive, to go**).

When is Allan **arriving** from Kiev?

We **are leaving** for Paris next week.

We have bought tickets. We **are going** to the theatre tonight.

§ 21. Придаточные времени и условия.

В придаточных времени и условия после союзов **if, when, as soon as** не употребляется будущее время.

When Nick returns, he will call you. Когда Ник вернется, он позвонит вам.

If it rains, we'll stay at home. Если пойдет дождь, мы останемся дома.

If he doesn't play with us, we won't win. Если он не будет играть с нами, мы не выиграем.

§ 22. Для выражения повторяющегося события в прошлом употребляется оборот **used to**. Это событие, действие происходило когда-то в прошлом, но не происходит сейчас.

They **used to** swim a lot last summer. Они обычно много плавали летом (а сейчас так много не плавают).

I **used to** travel with my parents. Я имел обыкновение путешествовать с родителями (а сейчас нет).

Отрицательная и вопросительная формы оборота чаще образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to do**.

He **didn't use to** like skating when he was small.

Did you use to go in for sports at school?

Однако возможны варианты:

He **used not to** like riding a horse when he lived in the country.

§ 23. The past continuous tense выражает незаконченное действие в прошлом. Это — длительное действие, происходящее в определенный момент в прошлом.

Nick **was having** a bath at that time.

Yesterday at four you **were playing** chess.

При этом то, когда именно происходило то или иное действие в прошлом, может также уточняться при помощи придаточных предложений, вводимых союзами **when** и **while**.

Steve was making a phone call when John entered.

While Jane was lying on the beach her sister was working hard at home.

The past continuous tense может описывать также действие, которое продолжалось в прошлом в течение указанного отрезка времени и обозначено в предложении такими словосочетаниями, как **all day long, all night, the whole evening**.
Ср.:

She was cooking all the morning yesterday.

Однако, если указание на отрезок времени происходит при помощи предлога **for**, используется **past simple**. Ср.:

She cooked for two hours and then left (the house).

§ 24. Модальные глаголы.

Глагол **should (shouldn't)** передает в английском языке идею долженствования, выражаемую в мягкой форме: в качестве совета, рекомендации.

You should go there! Тебе следует пойти туда.

You shouldn't speak that loudly. Не следует так громко говорить.

В этом смысле модальный глагол **ought to** очень близок по значению к глаголу **should** и может в большинстве случаев заменять его. После глагола **ought** употребляется частица **to**.

You ought to have a rest.

§ 25. Страдательный залог (passive voice).

В английском языке имеются два залога — действительный (active voice) и страдательный (passive voice). В предложении **Mrs Brown grows flowers in her garden** глагол употреблен в действительном залоге, так как **Mrs Brown** (подлежащее предложения) сама совершает действие, сама выращивает цветы.

Если для говорящего не важно, кто совершает действие, или если он этого не знает, то глагол употребляется в страдательном залоге.

Beautiful roses are grown here. Здесь выращивают великолепные розы.

Образуется страдательный залог при помощи вспомогатель-

ного глагола **to be** в соответствующей форме (*am, is, are, was, were*) и второго причастия основного глагола. Для так называемых **правильных** глаголов эта форма совпадает с формой прошедшего времени. У **неправильных** глаголов эту форму нужно запомнить: **to be + Participle II**.

В отрицательных предложениях вспомогательный глагол **to be** употребляется с частицей **not**.

Such books are not sold here. Подобные книги здесь не продаются.

В вопросительных предложениях глагол **to be** ставится перед подлежащим:

Was St. Petersburg founded in 1703?

§ 26. Косвенная речь (reported speech/indirect speech).

Речь, которая передает подлинные слова какого-либо лица, называется **прямой** речью. Речь, в которой передается содержание того, что было кем-то сказано, называется **косвенной**.

При изменении прямой речи в косвенную соблюдаются правила согласования времен. Если глагол, который вводит косвенную речь, употреблен в настоящем или будущем времени (*present indefinite, present perfect, future indefinite*), в косвенной речи время глагола не меняется.

He says he was in Moscow in 2001.

Если глагол, вводящий косвенную речь, употреблен в прошедшем времени (*past indefinite*), то в косвенной речи обычно происходят следующие изменения:

present indefinite → past indefinite

He said: "I think Nelly is right." → He said he thought Nelly was right.

past indefinite, present perfect → past perfect

He said: "I lived in the country." → He said he had lived in the country.

He said: "I have done it." → He said he had done it.

future indefinite → future in the past

He said: "I will go there." → He said he would go there.

Если в косвенной речи сообщается о событии, которое является как бы общим фактом, то правило согласования времен в этом случае часто не применяется:

He said Paris is the capital of France.

а) Утвердительные и отрицательные предложения в косвенной речи.

Если после глагола **to say**, который вводит прямую речь, есть указание на то, к кому эта речь обращена, то глагол **to say** меняется на **to tell smb.**

Jeff said to Ann: "I am going to Glasgow." → Jeff told Ann he was going to Glasgow.

Все личные и притяжательные местоимения изменяются в зависимости от того, от какого лица что-то сообщается.

Pam said to Jill: "I want to talk to you." → Pam told Jill she wanted to talk to her.

Союз **that** часто опускается после глаголов **to say, to think, to know** и т. д.

He remembered (that) she had asked him about it.

В утвердительных и отрицательных предложениях в косвенной речи происходят также следующие изменения:

now → then

today → that day

tomorrow → the next day

the day after tomorrow → two days later

in two days → two days later

ago → before

next year → the next year

last week → the week before, the previous week

here → there

this → that

these → those

Необходимо также обратить внимание на перевод подобных предложений на русский язык.

He said he was writing a letter. Он сказал, что пишет письмо.

She said she lived in Rostov. Она сказала, что живет в Ростове.

They said they had lived in Rostov two years before. Они сказали, что жили в Ростове два года тому назад.

б) Вопросы в косвенной речи.

В вопросах в косвенной речи соблюдается прямой порядок слов, т. е. сказуемое стоит после подлежащего.

"Do you like ice cream?" asked Tom. — Tom asked if I liked ice cream.

Robert asked: "Where has Pete gone?" — Robert wanted to know where Pete had gone.

в) Просьбы и приказания в косвенной речи.

Повелительные предложения в косвенной речи вводятся обычно следующими глаголами: **to tell, to order, to ask** при этом указывается лицо, к которому обращена просьба или приказание.

Robert to his friend: "Come here!" — Robert asked his friend to come up to him.

Robert to Bob: "Don't be late!" — Robert told Bob not to be late.

THE ADVERB

Наречие — часть речи, которая указывает на признак действия, на обстоятельства, при которых оно протекает.

He **always** works hard.

§ 27. В предложении наречие может уточнять а) глагол,

б) прилагательное, в) наречие.

а) My granny doesn't hear **well**.

б) She is **rather** small.

в) I didn't sleep **very** well.

Наречия неопределенного времени (**often, always, seldom, usually, etc.**) обычно стоят перед основным глаголом, но после глагола **to be**.

He **often** goes to school by bus.

Does she **usually** get up at seven?

I am **seldom** unhappy.

Многосложные наречия неопределенного времени (**sometimes, generally, occasionally**) обычно могут стоять как в начале, так и в конце предложения.

Generally she arrived at 5.

He goes there **sometimes**.

ENGLISH-RUSSIAN VOCABULARY

adj — *adjective* — прилагательное
adv — *adverb* — наречие
conj — *conjunction* — союз
interj — *interjection* — междометие

n — *noun* — существительное
prep — *preposition* — предлог
pron — *pronoun* — местоимение
v — *verb* — глагол



a (an) [ə|ən] артикль
abbey ['æbi] аббатство
about [ə'baʊt] о, об, насчет
above [ə'baʊ] над
above zero выше нуля
academician [ˌækədɛ'miʃn] академик
accept [ək'sept] принимать
to accept the invitation принимать приглашение
according [ə'kɔ:dn] согласно, соответственно
accountant [ə'kaʊntənt] бухгалтер
across [ə'krɔs] через
act out ['ækt 'aʊt] разыграть по ролям
action ['ækʃn] действие
activity [æk'tɪvɪti] деятельность, активность
actor ['æktə] актер

add [æd] добавлять, прибавлять
address [ə'dres] адрес
admiral [əd'mɪrəl] адмирал
advice [əd'vaɪs] совет
to ask for advice просить совета
to follow the advice следовать совету
to take advice воспользоваться советом
It is good advice. Это хороший совет.
advise [əd'vaɪz] советовать
afraid [ə'freɪd] испуганный
to be afraid of smb/smth бояться кого-то/чего-то
Africa ['æfrɪkə] Африка
African ['æfrɪkən] африканский
after ['ɑ:ftə] после, потом

afternoon [ˈɑːftəˌnuːn] полдень
in the afternoon в полдень
again [əˈɡeɪn] снова
against [əˈɡeɪnst] против
to be against *smith* быть против
чего-то
age [eɪʃ] возраст
at the age of в возрасте
agree [əˈɡriː] соглашаться
air [eə] воздух
airport [ˈeəpɔːrt] аэропорт
Alaska [əˈlæskə] Аляска
alien [ˈeɪlɪn] чужестранец, инозе-
мец
all [ɔːl] весь, все
all day long целый день
alone [əˈləʊn] один
along [əˈlɒŋ] вдоль
aloud [əˈlaʊd] вслух
alphabet [ˈælfəbet] алфавит
already [ɔːlˈredi] уже
also [əˈlsəʊ] также, тоже
always [əˈlweɪz] всегда
America [əˈmɛrɪkə] Америка
Central America Центральная
Америка
North America Северная Аме-
рика
South America Южная Америка
American [əˈmɛrɪkən] американ-
ский
among [əˈmʌŋ] среди
amount [əˈmaʊnt] количество
ancient [ˈeɪnʃənt] древний
and [ænd], [ənd] и, а
animal [ˈænɪməl] животное
announcer [əˈnaʊnsə] диктор
another [əˈnʌðə] другой
answer [ˈɑːnsə] и ответ; с отве-
чать

Antarctic [ænˈtæktɪk] Антарктика
antonym [ˈæntənɪm] антоним
any [eni] какой-нибудь
anybody [ˈeniˌbɒdi] кто-нибудь
anything [ˈeniθɪŋ] что-нибудь
apartment [əˈpɑːtmənt] квартира
(амер.)
apologize [əˈpɒlədʒaɪz] извиняться
apology [əˈpɒlədʒi] извинение
appear [əˈpiə] появляться
appetite [ˈæpɪtaɪt] аппетит
applaud [əˈplɒd] аплодировать
applause [əˈplɔːz] аплодисменты
apple [ˈæpl] яблоко
April [ˈeɪprəl] апрель
architect [ˈɑːktekt] архитектор
the Arctic Ocean [ˈɑːktɪk ˈoʊʃn] Север-
ный Ледовитый океан
aristocrat [ˈærɪstɒkrət] аристократ
arm [ɑːm] рука (от ладони до
плеча)
armchair [ˈɑːmtʃeə] кресло
army [ˈɑːmi] армия
to be in the army служить в ар-
мии
to go into the army пойти в ар-
мию
to join the army пойти в ар-
мию
around [əˈraʊnd] вокруг
arrange [əˈreɪndʒ] располагать
arrival [əˈraɪvl] прибытие
arrive at/in [əˈraɪv] прибывать в
art(s) [ɑːt(s)] искусство
as [æz], [əz] потому, что; в то вре-
мя как
Asia [ˈeɪʃə] Азия
ask [ɑːsk] спрашивать, просить, при-
глашать
to ask for *smith* просить что-то

at [æt] у, около
 at first сначала
 attack [ə'tæk] атаковать, напа-
 дать
 attentively [ə'tentɪvli] внимательно
 audience ['ɔ:diəns] аудитория, зри-
 тели
 August ['ɒgəst] август
 aunt [aʊnt] тетья
 Australia [ə'streɪliə] Австралия
 automobile ['ɔ:təməbil] автомобиль
 autumn ['ɔ:təm] осень

B

baby ['beɪbi] ребенок до одного го-
 да, младенец
 back [bæk] *n* задняя часть чего-то;
adv назад
 to be at the back of smth в глу-
 бине, располагаться в задней
 части
 to be in the back сзади
 backache ['bækeɪk] боль в спине, боль
 в пояснице
 bacon ['beɪkən] бекон
 bad [bəd] (worse; the worst) плохой
 (хуже; самый плохой)
 badge [bɪdʒ] значок
 badminton ['bædmɪntən] бадминтон
 bag [bæg] сумка, портфель
 baker ['beɪkə] булочник
 at the baker's в булочной
 balance ['bæləns] баланс, пропорция
 balcony ['bælkəni] балкон
 ball [bɔ:l] мяч
 ballet ['bæleɪ] балет
 the Baltic Sea [ˌbɔ:lɪk 'si:] Балтий-
 ское море

bank [bæŋk] берег (реки, озера)
 bar [bɑ:] кусок, брусок
 a bar of chocolate плитка шоко-
 лада, шоколадный батончик
 barber ['bɑ:bə] парикмахер (муж-
 ской)
 at the barber's в парикмахерской
 baseball ['beɪsbɔ:l] бейсбол
 basic ['beɪsɪk] основной, главный
 basic course основной курс
 basketball ['bæskɪtbɔ:l] баскетбол
 bathroom ['bɑ:θru:m] ванная
 battery ['bætəri] батарея, аккумуля-
 тор
 battle ['bætl] битва, сражение
 be [bi:] (was/were; been) быть, на-
 ходиться
 to be able to быть в состоянии
 (делать что-то)
 to be going to собираться
 to be lost потеряться
 to be on at the cinema идти в
 кино
 What's on at the "Udarnik"? Что
 идет в «Ударнике»?
 What's on TV? Что по телеви-
 зору?
 I have been to London. Я бывал
 в Лондоне.
 to be on быть включенным
 to be off быть выключенным
 bear [beə] медведь
 beauty ['bjuti] 1. красота 2. краса-
 влица
 because [bi'kɒz] потому что
 become [bi'kʌm] (became; become)
 становиться
 bed [bed] кровать
 to go to bed лечь спать
 bedroom ['bedru:m] спальня

beef [bi:] говядина
beer [biə] пиво
before [bɪfə] до, перед
begin [bɪɡɪn] (**began**; **begun**) начинать
beginning [bɪɡɪnɪŋ] начало
behind [bɪhaɪnd] за, сзади
believe [bɪ'li:v] верить, полагать
I can't believe my eyes! Не могу поверить своим глазам!
bell [bel] колокол, звонок
belong to *smb/smith* [bɪ'lɒŋ] принадлежать кому-то/чему-то
below [bɪ'ləʊ] внизу, ниже
Berlin [bɜ:'lɪn] Берлин
besides [bɪ'saɪdɪz] кроме того
best [best] самый лучший
better [betə] лучше, лучший
Better late than never. Лучше поздно, чем никогда.
But better never be late! Но лучше не опаздывать.
between [bɪ'twi:n] между
Bible ['baɪbl] Библия
big [bɪɡ] большой
biography [baɪ'ɒɡrəfi] биография
birch [bɜ:'ʃ] береза
bird [bɜ:'d] птица
birth [bɜ:'θ] рождение
date of birth дата рождения
place of birth место рождения
birthday ['bɜ:'θdeɪ] день рождения
Happy birthday to ...! С днем рождения!
bit (a bit) [bɪt] немного, чуть-чуть
bitter ['bɪtə] 1. горький 2. резкий, сильный, ожесточенный
It's bitter cold! Ужасно холодно!
black-and-white film черно-белый фильм

blackboard ['blækbrɔ:d] школьная доска
block [blɒk] квартал
to walk two blocks пройти два квартала
blossom ['blɒsəm] цвет, цветок
to be in blossom быть в цвету
blouse [blaʊz] блуза
blow [bləʊ] (**blew**; **blown**) дуть
blue [blu:] голубой, синий
board [bɔ:d] борт
on board the ship на борту корабля
boaster ['bəʊstə] хвастун
boat [bəʊt] лодка, корабль
to go boating кататься на лодке
body ['bɒdi] тело
bonfire ['bɒnfɜ:] большой костер
book [bʊk] *a* книга; *v* бронировать, заказывать заранее
bookcase ['bʊkkeɪs] книжный шкаф
boot [bu:t] ботинок
boring ['bɔ:ɪŋ] скучный
born [bɔ:n] рожденный
to be born родиться
boss [bɒs] босс, начальник
both [bəʊθ] оба
bottle ['bɒtl] бутылка
box [bɒks] коробка, ящик
boy [bɔɪ] мальчик
bracket ['bræktɪ] скобка
given in brackets данные в скобках
branch [brʌnʃ] ветка, ветвь
brave [breɪv] храбрый
bravery ['breɪvəri] храбрость
bread [bred] хлеб
break [breɪk] (**broke**; **broken**) ломать, разбивать

to break a law нарушить закон

breakfast ['brekfəst] завтрак

to have for breakfast на завтрак

breathe [brið] дышать

breeze [bri:z] легкий ветерок, бриз

bridge [brɪdʒ] мост

bright [braɪt] яркий

bring [brɪŋ] (brought; brought) приносить

bronze [brɒnz] бронзовый

brother ['brʌðə] брат

brown [braʊn] коричневый

brush up ['brʌʃ 'ʌp] освежать в памяти

build [bɪld] (built; built) строить

builder ['bɪldə] строитель

building ['bɪldɪŋ] здание

burglar ['bɜ:glə] вор, грабитель

burn [bɜ:n] (burnt; burnt) гореть

bus [bʌs] автобус

by bus автобусом

number 7 bus автобус номер 7

bus stop автобусная остановка

at the bus stop на остановке автобуса

business ['biznis] дело, занятие

busy ['bɪzi] 1. занятой 2. оживленный

but [bʌt] но

butcher ['bʊtʃə] мясник

at the butcher's в мясном магазине (отделе)

butter ['bʌtə] масло

buy [baɪ] (bought; bought) покупать

by [baɪ] у, около

by heart наизусть

by the way между прочим

bye/bye-bye [baɪ/baɪ'baɪ] пока

C

California [kælɪfɔ:niə] Калифорния

call [kɔ:l] 1. звать 2. звонить

calm [kɔ:m] успокаивать

Calm down! [kɔ:m'daʊn] Успокойся!

can [kæn] консервная банка

a can of coca-cola банка кока-колы

can [kæn] (could) мочь

Could I have ...? Не мог бы я ...?

Canada ['kænədə] Канада

canal [kə'neɪl] канал

Canberra ['kænbərə] Канберра

candy ['kændi] конфета (амер.)

cap [kæp] кепка, шапка

capital ['kæpɪtəl] столица

Capitol ['kæpɪtəl] Капитолий

car [kɑ:] машина

by car машиной

care [keə] забота

to take care of smb/smith заботиться о ком-л./чем-л.

careful ['keəfəl] осторожный

carefully ['keəfəli] осторожно

careless ['keəlis] беспечный, неосторожный

carelessly ['keəlishli] неосторожно

carpet ['kæpɪt] ковер

carrot (carrots) ['kærət] морковь

carry ['kæri] носить

to carry mail перевозить почту

cartoon [kɑ:'tu:n] мультфильм

the Caspian Sea [kæspɪən 'si:] Каспийское море

castle ['kæsl] замок

catch [kætʃ] (caught; caught) поймать, схватить

to catch a plane (train, bus) yc-

петь на самолет (поезд, автобус)
 category ['kætɪɡəri] категория
 caviar ['kæviə] икра
 celebrate ['selibreɪ] праздновать
 celebration [ˌselɪbreɪʃn] празднование
 cent [sent] цент
 central ['sentrəl] центральный
 central heating центральное отопление
 centre ['sentə] центр
 century ['sentʃəri] век
 ceremony ['serɪməni] церемония
 certain ['sɜ:tn] определенный, некоторый
 certainly ['sɜ:tnli] конечно
 champion ['tʃæmpjən] чемпион
 change [tʃeɪndʒ] *n* сдача; *v* 1. менять
 2. делать пересадку
 Where do we change? Где мы пересаживаемся?
 Change over. Поменяйтесь ролями.
 character ['kærɪktə] герой (книги, фильма)
 cheap [tʃi:p] дешевый
 check (up) [tʃek (ʌp)] проверить
 check in регистрировать;
 check-in регистрация;
 chemist ['kemɪst] аптекарь
 at the chemist's в аптеке
 chest [tʃest] грудная клетка
 Chicago ['tʃɪkəɡo:] Чикаго
 chicken (chick) ['tʃɪkɪn] цыпленок
 child [tʃaɪld] ребенок
 children ['tʃɪldrən] дети
 chimney ['tʃɪməni] труба
 China [tʃaɪnə] Китай
 choice [tʃɔɪs] выбор

choose [tʃu:z] (chose; chosen) выбирать
 Christian ['krɪstɪən] христианин
 Christmas ['krɪsməs] Рождество
 chronicle ['krɒnɪkl] летопись
 chrysanthemum [krɪ'sænθəməm] хризантема
 church [tʃɜ:ʃ] церковь
 cinema ['kɪnəmə] 1. кино 2. кинотеатр
 cinema-goer ['sɪnəməˌɡoʊə] любитель кино
 What's on at ...? Что идет в ...?
 circle ['sɜ:kl] обводить кругом
 circus ['sɜ:kəs] *n* цирк; *adj* цирковой
 city ['sɪti] большой город
 class [klɑ:s] класс
 after classes после занятий
 before classes до занятий
 in class в классе
 business class первый класс (*о билете на самолет*)
 tourist class второй класс (*о билете на самолет*)
 classical ['klæsɪkl] классический
 classroom ['klɑ:stʃu:m] классная комната, класс
 clean [kleɪn] *adj* чистый; *v* чистить, убирать
 cleaning day день уборки
 clever ['klevə] умный
 climate ['klaɪmɪ] климат
 climb [klaɪm] залезать, взбираться
 close [klaʊz] закрывать
 clothes [klaʊðz] одежда
 cloud [klaʊd] облако
 clown [klaʊn] клоун
 club [klʌb] клуб
 coat [kəʊt] пальто, пиджак, куртка

coffee ['kɒfi] кофе
coin [kɔɪn] монета
gold coin золотая монета
cold [kəʊld] холодный
collect [kəlekt] собирать, коллекционировать
collection [kə'leɪʃn] коллекция
collector [kə'lektɪs] коллекционер
colonist ['kɒlənɪst] колонист, житель колонии
colony ['kɒləni] колония
colour ['kʌlə] цвет
colour film цветной фильм
coloured [kələd] раскрашенный
colourful ['kələfʊl] красочный, яркий
column ['kɒləm] колонка
combination [kəmbɪ'neɪʃn] сочетание, комбинация
word combination словосочетание
come [kʌm] (came; come) приходить
Come and see me some day. Заходи ко мне как-нибудь.
to come back возвращаться
to come from 1. быть родом
 2. приходить из/с
to come home приходить домой
comedy ['kɒmɪdi] комедия
comfortable ['kʌmfətəbəl] удобный
common ['kɒmən] обычный
commonly ['kɒmənli] обычно
least commonly used наименее часто используемое
most commonly used наиболее часто используемое
compare [kəm'peɪs] сравнивать, сравнить
compete [kəm'pi:t] соревноваться
competition [kəm'pi:tɪʃn] соревнование

complete [kəm'pli:t] заканчивать
compliment ['kɒmplɪmənt] комплимент
to pay a compliment делать комплимент
compose [kəm'pəʊz] сочинять, составлять
compound [kəm'paʊnd] сложное слово
computer [kəm'pjʊtə] компьютер
concert ['kɒnsət] концерт
conductor [kən'dʌktə] 1. дирижер
 2. кондуктор
confectionery [kən'fekʃnəri] кондитерская
conference ['kɒnfərəns] конференция
conservative [kən'sɜ:vətɪv] консервативный
consist (of) [kən'sɪst] состоять (из)
consult [kən'sʌlt] консультировать
continent ['kɒntɪnənt] континент
continental [kɒntɪ'nentl] относящийся к материку
continue [kən'tɪnju:] продолжать
conveniences [kən'vi:niənsɪz] удобства
modern conveniences современные удобства
convenient [kən'vi:niənt] удобный
conversation [kɒnvə'seɪʃn] беседа
cook [kʊk] готовить
cooker ['kʊkə] плита
cooking day день приготовления пищи
copy out ['kɒpi 'aʊt] списывать, переписывать
corner ['kɒnə] угол
in the corner в углу
correct [kə'rekt] правильный
correctly [kə'rekth] правильно

corresponding [kɒrɪspɒndɪŋ] соответствующий

cost [kɒst] (cost; cost) стоить

How much does it cost? Сколько это стоит?

costume ['kɒstjʊm] костюм (маскарадный)

cottage ['kɒtɪdʒ] коттедж

cottage cheese ['kɒtɪdʒ 'tʃi:z] творог

cough [kɒf] *n* кашель; *v* кашлять

count [kaʊnt] считать

countable [kaʊntəbl] исчисляемое

country ['kʌntri] 1. страна 2. сельская местность

in the country за городом

cover ['kʌvə] *n* обложка, покрытие; *v* покрывать

cowboy [kaʊboɪ] ковбой

cream [kri:m] сливки

create [kri:'eɪt] создавать

criminal ['krɪmɪnəl] *n* преступник; *ad* преступный

critic ['krɪtɪk] критик

criticize ['krɪtɪsaɪz] критиковать

crocodile ['krɒkədɪl] крокодил

crossword ['krɒswɜ:d] кроссворд

cry [kraɪ] 1. плакать 2. кричать

to cry for help звать на помощь

Cuba ['kju:bə] Куба

culture ['kʌlʃə] культура

cup [kʌp] чашка

cupboard ['kʌbəd] буфет, кухонный шкаф, полка

curious ['kjʊəriəs] любопытный

curtain ['kɜ:tɪn] занавес

curtsy ['kɜ:tsɪ] делать реверанс

custom ['kʌstəm] обычай

So many countries so many customs. Сколько стран, столько и обычаев.

customs ['kʌstəms] таможенные

at the customs на таможне

customs officer ['kʌstəmz ,ɒfɪsə] таможенник

cut [kʌt] (cut; cut) резать; срубить

D

daffodil [ˈdæfədɪl] нарцисс

dairy ['deəri] молочный

dairymaid ['deəriˌmeɪd] доярка, молочница

dairy products молочные продукты

daisy ['deɪzi] маргаритка

danger [ˈdeɪŋdʒə] опасность

in danger в опасности

out of danger вне опасности

dangerous [ˈdeɪŋdʒərəs] опасный

dark [dɑ:k] темный

It is getting dark. Темнеет.

daughter [ˈdɔ:tɪz] дочь

day [deɪ] день

the day before yesterday позавчера

day off выходной день

the other day на днях

dead [ded] мертвый

dear [dɪə] дорогой

Oh, dear! О, Боже!

December [dɪ'sembə] декабрь

decide [dɪ'saɪd] решать

decorate [ˈdeɪkəreɪt] украшать

decoration [ˌdeɪkə'reɪʃn] украшение

decorator [ˌdeɪkə'reɪtə] декоратор

deep [di:p] глубокий

definite [ˈdefɪnɪt] определенный

definitely [ˈdefɪnɪtli] определенно

delay [dɪleɪ] *n* задержка; *v* задерживать(ся), опаздывать

Delhi ['delt] Дели
democratic [dema'krætɪk] демократи-
 ческий
denote [dɪ'noʊt] обозначать
dentist ['dentɪst] зубной врач
department [dɪ'pɑ:tmənt] отдел
department store [dɪ'pɑ:tmənt stɔ:]
 универсам
departure [dɪ'pɑ:tʃə] отправление
depend [dɪ'pend] зависеть
 to depend on *smb/smth* зависеть
 от *кого-то/чего-то*
It depends! Судя по обстоятель-
 ствам.
describe [dɪ'skraɪb] описывать
desk [desk] парт
 at the desk за партой
dessert [dɪ'zɜ:t] десерт
 for dessert на десерт
detailed ['dɪteɪld] детальный
detective film [dɪ'tektɪv 'fɪlm] детектив
develop [dɪ'veləp] развивать
devoted to *smb* [dɪ'vəʊtɪd] преданный
кому-то
dialogue [daɪ'ɒləg] диалог
diary ['daɪəri] дневник
dictionary [dɪkʃənəri] словарь
die [daɪ] умирать
diet ['daɪət] диета
 to be on a diet быть на диете
 to keep to a diet придерживаться
 диеты
differ ['dɪfə] отличаться
difference ['dɪfrəns] отличие
different ['dɪfrənt] различный
difficult ['dɪfɪklt] трудный
dime [daɪm] монета в 10 центов
dining room ['daɪnɪŋ ru:m] столовая
 (в доме)
dinner ['dɪnə] обед, ужин

to have for dinner на обед
dirty ['dɜ:ti] грязный
disagree [dɪs'grɪ] не соглашаться
disappear [dɪs'pɪə] исчезать
discover [dɪs'kʌvə] открывать
discoverer [dɪs'kʌvərə] первооткрыва-
 тель
discovery [dɪs'kʌvəri] открытие
discuss [dɪ'skʌs] обсуждать
dislike [dɪs'laɪk] не любить
divide [dɪ'vaɪd] делить
do [du:] (**did**; **done**) делать
doctor ['dɒktə] врач
documentary (film) [dɒkjʊ'mentəri]
 документальный фильм
dollar ['dɒlə] доллар
dolphin ['dɒlfɪn] дельфин
door [dɔ:] дверь
doubt [daʊt] сомнение
down [daʊn] вниз
downstairs [daʊn'steɪz] внизу, вниз
drama ['dræmə] драма
draw I [drɔ:] (**drew**; **drawn**) рисовать
draw II игра вничью
 to end in a draw заканчиваться
 вничью
dress [dres] л платье; v одеваться
drink [drɪŋk] (**drank**; **drunk**) пить
driver ['draɪvə] водитель
dull [dʌl] скучный, пасмурный
duty ['dʒʌti] долг, обязанность

E

each [i:] каждый
 each other друг друга
ear [ɪə] ухо
earache ['ɪərəɪk] боль в ухе
earth [ɜ:θ] земля

east [i:st] восток
 easy ['i:zi] легкий
 eat [i:t] (**ate; eaten**) есть
 education [edʒu'keiʃn] образование
 egg [eg] яйцо
 Egypt ['ɛɡɪpt] Египет
 elbow [elbəʊ] локоть
 elect [ɪlekt] избирать, выбирать
 electricity [ɪlek'trɪsɪti] электричество
 elephant ['elɪfənt] слон
 else [els] еще
 what else что еще
 where else где/куда еще
 who else кто еще
 emblem ['embələm] эмблема
 emperor ['emprə] император
 empire ['empraɪə] империя
 empty ['empti] пустой
 encourage [ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ] поощрять, вдох-
 новлять
 end [end] *л* конец; *в* заканчивать(ся)
 at the end в конце
 up to the end до конца
 enemy ['enɪmi] враг
 engineer [ɪnʃɪ'nɪə] инженер
 enjoy [ɪn'dʒɔɪ] получать удовольст-
 вие
 enumerate [ɪ'nju:məreɪt] пронумеро-
 вать
 equivalent [ɪ'kwɪvələnt] *л* эквивалент;
 ad равный
 especially [ɪ'speʃli] особенно
 Europe [jʊərəp] Европа
 European [jʊərə'pi:ən] европейский
 even ['i:vən] даже
 evening ['i:vniŋ] вечер
 in the evening вечером
 on Monday evening в понедель-
 ник вечером
 ever ['evə] когда-нибудь

everybody ['evri,bɒdi] каждый
 everything ['evriθɪŋ] все
 examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] *л* экзамен; *в* экзам-
 меновать
 excellent ['eksələnt] отличный
 excite [ɪk'saɪt] волновать
 excuse [ɪkskjuz] извинять
 Excuse me ... Извините
 exercise ['eksəsaɪz] упражнение
 to do exercises делать упражне-
 ния
 exercise book ['eksəsaɪz bu:k] тетрадь
 exhibition [ɪksɪ'bɪʃn] выставка
 exist [ɪg'zɪst] существовать
 expensive [ɪk'spensɪv] дорогой, стоя-
 щий дорого
 explain **to (smb)** [ɪk'spleɪn] объяс-
 нять (*кому-то*)
 exploration [ɪksplə'reɪʃn] исследова-
 ние
 explore [ɪk'splɔɪ] исследовать
 explorer [ɪk'splɔɪə] исследователь
 express [ɪk'spres] выражать
 extra [ek'strə] дополнительный



face [feɪs] лицо
 to face повернуться лицом
 fact [fækt] факт
 factory ['fæktəri] фабрика
 fairy tale ['feəri teɪl] сказка
 fall [fɔ:l] (**fell; fallen**) падать
 false [fɔ:ls] неверный
 family ['fæmli] семья
 famous for *smth* ['feməs] известный
 чем-то
 fantastic [fən'tæstɪk] потрясающий
 far [fɑ:] далекий

far from далеко от
the Far East Дальний Восток
fare [fɛə] плата за проезд
farm [fɑ:m] *n* ферма; *v* обрабатывать землю
fast [fɑ:st] *ad* быстрый; *adv* быстро
fat [fæt] толстый, жирный
father [ˈfɑ:ðə] отец
favourite [ˈfeɪvərɪt] любимый
feature (film) [ˈfi:tʃə] художественный фильм
February [ˈfebrʊəri] февраль
feel [fi:l] (felt; felt) чувствовать
 to feel bad чувствовать себя плохо
 to feel like doing smth иметь желание что-то сделать
festival [ˈfestɪvəl] фестиваль
few [fju:] несколько, мало
 a few [fju:] несколько
fewer [ˈfju:ə] меньше
fiction [ˈfɪk(t)ʃən] художественная литература
field [fi:ld] 1. поле 2. отрасль
fight [faɪt] *n* 1. драка 2. сражение; *v* драться, сражаться
 to have a fight сражаться
 to fight against stb сражаться против кого-то
 to fight for smth сражаться за что-то
fill in [ˈfɪl ˈɪn] вставить
film [fɪlm] фильм
 historical film исторический фильм
find [faɪnd] (found; found) найти
 to find out найти; выяснить
fine [faɪn] прекрасный; хороший
finger [ˈfɪŋɡə] палец

finish [ˈfɪnɪʃ] *v* заканчивать
fire [ˈfaɪə] 1. огонь 2. камни 3. пожар
fireman [ˈfaɪəzmən] пожарный
fireplace [ˈfaɪəpleɪs] камин
firework [ˈfaɪəwɜ:k] фейерверк
fish [fɪʃ] *n* рыба; *v* ловить рыбу
fisherman [ˈfɪʃəmən] рыбак
flat [flæt] квартира
flight [flaɪt] полет
floor [flɔ:] 1. пол 2. этаж
 on the ground floor на первом этаже
flour [ˈflaʊə] мука
flower [ˈflaʊə] цветок
flu [flu:] грипп
flute [flu:t] флейта
 to play the flute играть на флейте
fly [flaɪ] (flew; flown) летать
 to fly east (west) лететь на восток (запад)
fog [fɒɡ] туман
foggy [ˈfɒɡɪ] туманный
folk [fɔ:k] народный
follow [ˈfɒləʊ] следовать
following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ] следующий
fond [fɒnd] любящий
 to be fond of smth/stb любить что-то/кого-то
 to be fond of doing smth любить делать что-то
food [fu:d] пища, еда
foolish [ˈfʊlɪʃ] глупый
foot [fu:t] (feet [fi:t]) нога/ступня (ноги)
 to go on foot идти пешком
football [ˈfʊtbɔ:l] футбол
foreign [ˈfɒrɪn] иностранный
forest [ˈfɒrɪst] лес

forget [fə'get] (forgot; forgotten) за-
бывать

fork [fɔ:k] вилка

form [fɔ:m] *n* 1. форма, анкета
2. класс; *v* составлять

former ['fɔ:mə] бывший

found [faʊnd] основывать

founded ['faʊndəd] основанный

to be founded быть основанным

fountain ['faʊntɪn] фонтан

fox [fɒks] лиса

France [frɑ:ns] Франция

free [fri:] свободный, бесплатный

freeze [fri:z] (froze; frozen) замерз-
нуть, заморозить

It's freezing! Морозит!

frequently ['frikwəntli] часто

fresh [freʃ] свежий

Friday ['fraɪdi] пятница

fridge [frɪdʒ] холодильник

friend [frend] друг

friendly ['frendli] дружелюбный

friendship ['frendʃɪp] дружба

frog [frɒg] лягушка

from [frɒm] от, из

front [frʌnt] передний

in front of *smth* перед чем-то

fruit [fru:t] фрукт, фрукты

fry [fraɪ] жарить

fulfil [fʊl'fɪl] выполнять

full [fʊl] полный

to be full of *smth* быть полным
чего-то

furniture ['fɜ:nɪʃə] мебель

future ['fju:tʃə] будущее



gallery ['gæləri] галерея

game [geɪm] игра

gangster ['gæŋstə] гангстер

garden ['gɑ:dn] сад

gas [gæs] газ

general [dʒenərəl] генерал

geography [dʒɒɡrəfi] география

German [dʒɜ:mən] немецкий

Germany ['dʒɜ:məni] Германия

get [get] (got; got) получать, доста-
вать

to get on with *smb* ладить с кем-
то

to get into a car сесть в машину

to get out of a car выйти из ма-
шины

to get on a train (bus) сесть на
поезд (автобус)

to get off a train (bus) сойти с
поезда (автобуса)

to get ready подготовиться

to get together собраться

to get up вставать

giant ['dʒaɪənt] *n* великан; *adj* ги-
гантский

giraffe [dʒɪ'rɑ:f] жираф

girl [gɜ:l] девочка

give [gɪv] (gave; given) давать

to give back возвращать

to give a call to *smb* звонить
кому-л.

glad [gləd] довольный

to be glad быть довольным

glass [glɑ:s] стакан, стекло

go [gəʊ] (went; gone) идти, ехать

to go in for sports заниматься
спортом

to go on telling *smth* продолжать
рассказывать что-л.

God [gɒd] Бог

My God! Боже мой!

Thank God! Слава Богу!

gold [gəʊld] *n* золото; *adj* золотой
(сделанный из золота)
as good as gold золотой (человек)
a heart of gold золотое сердце
gold coin золотая монета
golden ['gəʊldən] золотой; золотистый
golden hair золотистые волосы
good [gʊd] хороший
Good luck! Удачи!
government ['gʌvnmənt] правительство
grammar ['græmə] грамматика
grandfather ['grænd,fɑ:ðə] дедушка
grandmother ['grænd,mʌðə] бабушка
grandparents ['grænpə'rents] дедушка и бабушка
grass [grɑ:s] трава
grasshopper ['græshɒpə] кузнечик
great [greɪt] 1. великий 2. потрясающий, отличный
It's great! Великолечно! Потрясающе!
You look great! Ты отлично выглядишь!
greedy ['ɡri:di] жадный
green [ɡri:n] зеленый
greengrocer ['ɡri:ndʒrəʊsə] зеленщик, продавец отдела «овощи-фрукты»
at the greengrocer's в магазине (отделе) «овощи-фрукты»
greeting ['ɡri:ɪŋ] приветствие
on greeting приветствуя
grocer ['ɡrəʊsə] бакалейщик
at the grocer's в бакалейном отделе
group [ɡru:p] *n* группа; *v* группировать, классифицировать
grow [ɡrəʊ] (grew; grown) расти

guess [ges] догадываться
guest [ɡest] гость
guitar [ɡɪ'tɑ:] гитара
to play the guitar играть на гитаре
gun [ɡʌn] ружье

H

hair [heə] волосы
half [ha:f] (halves [hævz]) половина (половинки)
It's half past 5. Половина шестого.
hall [hɔ:l] холл, прихожая
Halloween [ˌhæləʊ'ɪn] канун Дня всех святых
hamburger ['hæmbɜ:qə] гамбургер
hamster ['hæmstə] хомячок
hand [hænd] рука (ладонь)
handicraft ['hændɪkra:ft] урок труда
Hanoi [hə'no:ɪ] Ханой
happen to smb/smith ['hæp(ə)n] случаться с кем-то/чем-то
happy ['hæpi] счастливый
Happy New Year! С Новым годом!
hard [hɑ:d] *adj* упорный, тяжелый; *adv* упорно, тяжело, сильно
hard-boiled eggs [ˌhɑ:d'boɪld eɡz] яйца вкрутую
hardly ['hɑ:dlɪ] едва, почти
hardly ever ['hɑ:dlɪ 'evə] очень редко, почти никогда
hare [heə] заяц
harm [hɑ:m] вред
to do (a lot of) harm причинять (много) вреда

harvest ['hævɪst] урожай, сбор урожая
hate [heɪt] *v* ненавидеть; *v* ненавидеть
haughty ['hɔ:ti] надменный, высокомерный
have (has) [hæv] ([həvz]) (had; had) иметь
 to have got (has got) иметь
 to have to (has to) иметь необходимость что-то сделать
hawthorn ['hɔ:θɔ:n] боярышник
he [hi:] он
head [hed] голова
 head teacher [hed 'ti:tʃə] директор школы
headline ['hedlaɪn] заголовок
hear [hiə] (**heard; heard**) слышать
heart [hɑ:t] сердце
 by heart наизусть
heartache ['hɑ:teɪk] боль в сердце
Hello! [he'ləʊ] Привет!
help [help] помогать
 to help about the house помогать по дому
 to help about the house day день помощи по дому
 to help smb with some subject помогать кому-л. по предмету
her [hɜ:] ее, ей, о ней
here [hiə] здесь
 Here it is. Вот, пожалуйста!
Hi! [hai] Привет!
hide [haɪd] (**hid; hidden**) прятаться
hide-and-seek [ˌhaɪdən'si:k] прятки (*детская игра*)
high [hai] *adj* высокий; *adv* высоко
hill [hɪl] холм
him [hɪm] его, ему, о нем (*кого?*)
his [hɪz] его (*чей?*)

historic [hɪ'stɒrɪk] исторический
history ['hɪstəri] история
hobby ['hɒbi] хобби, любимое занятие
hockey ['hɒki] хоккей
hold [həʊld] (**held; held**) держать
holiday ['hɒlədi] 1. праздник 2. каникулы
holly ['hɒli] остролист
home [həʊm] дом, домой
 at home дома
homework ['həʊmwɜ:k] домашнее задание
 to do homework выполнять домашнее задание
honest ['ɒnɪst] честный
honey ['hʌni] мед
honeysuckle ['hʌnɪsəkl] жимолость
hop [hɒp] хмель
hope [həʊp] надеяться
hopscotch ['hɒpskɒtʃ] классики (*детская игра*)
horn [hɔ:n] рог, рожок
horror ['hɒrə] ужас
 horror film (movie) фильм ужасов
horse [hɔ:s] лошадь
hospitable ['hɒspɪəbl] гостеприимный
hospital ['hɒspɪtl] больница
host [həʊst] хозяин
hostess ['hɒstɪs] хозяйка
hot [hɒt] горячий
 hot and cold running water водопровод
hour [aʊə] час
house (houses) [haʊs] ([ˌhaʊzɪz]) дом (дома)
how [haʊ] как, каким образом
 How are you? Как дела?

How are you getting on? Как по-
живаешь?

How do you do? Здравствуйте!

how often как часто

how long сколь долго, сколько
времени

how many сколько (*с исчисляе-
мыми сущ.*)

How do you like it? Как тебе это
правится?

How've you been? Как ты пожи-
вал это время?

How long have you been here?
Сколько времени ты здесь?

humble [ˈhʌmbəl] скромный, застен-
чивый, робкий

humid [ˈhjuːmɪd] влажный

humorist [ˈhjuːmərɪst] юморист

hundred [ˈhʌndrɪd] сто

hungry [ˈhʌŋɡri] голодный

to be hungry быть голодным, хо-
теть есть

hunt [hʌnt] охотиться

hunter [ˈhʌntə] охотник

hurry [ˈhʌri] в спешка; *о* спешить
to be in a hurry спешить

Hurry up! Поторопись!

hurt [hɜ:t] (*hurt; hurt*) 1. болеть
2. причинять боль

I

ice [aɪs] лед

ice cream [aɪs ˈkriːm] мороженое

Iceland [ˈaɪslənd] Исландия

idea [aɪˈdɪə] мысль

That's a great (good) idea! Заме-
чательная идея (мысль)!

identification [aɪˌdentɪfɪˈkeɪʃn] опозна-

вание, установление подлин-
ности

ill [ɪl] больной

to be ill болеть

illness [ˈɪlnɪs] болезнь

illustrate [ˈɪləstreɪt] показать на при-
мере

imagination [ɪˌmæʃɪˈneɪʃn] воображе-
ние

imagine [ɪˌmæʃɪn] представить, во-
образить

immediately [ɪˈmɪdiətli] немедленно

important [ɪmˈpɔːtənt] важный

impossible [ɪmˈpɒsəbl̩] невозможный

in [ɪn] в (*где?*)

in an hour через час

include [ɪnˈkluːd] включать

indeed [ɪnˈdiːd] в самом деле

independence (from smb)

[ɪnˌdɪpendəns] независимость (от
кого-л.)

India [ˈɪndɪə] Индия

Indian [ˈɪndiən] индийский

the Indian Ocean Индийский
океан

Indians [ˈɪndiənz] индийцы

industrial [ɪnˈdʌstriəl] промышлен-
ный

industry [ˈɪndəstri] промышленность

informal [ɪnˈfɔːml̩] неофициальный

information [ɪnfəˈmeɪʃn] сведения

instead [ɪnˈsted] вместо *чего-то*

instrument [ˈɪnstɪrəmənt] инструмент

interested [ˈɪntərɪstɪd] заинтересо-
ванный

to be interested in smth интере-
соваться *чем-то*

interesting [ˈɪntərɪstɪŋ] интересный

international [ˌɪntəˈnæʃnəl] междуна-
родный

interval ['ɪntəvəl] интервал
interview ['ɪntəvjʊ] *н* интервью; *с*
брать интервью
into ['ɪntə] *в* (*куда?*)
invent [ɪn'vent] изобретать
invitation [ɪnvɪ'teɪʃən] приглашение
invite [ɪn'vaɪt] приглашать
Ireland ['aɪələnd] Ирландия
irregular [ɪ'reɡjələ] неправильный
island ['aɪlənd] остров
it [ɪ] оно

It takes smb 3 hours to do it.

Нужно 3 часа, чтобы сделать это.

It's been a long time. Много времени прошло.

It was nice meeting you. Приятно было познакомиться.

Italian [ɪ'tæljən] итальянский

Italy ['ɪtəli] Италия

J

jacket ['dʒækt] куртка, жакет

jam [dʒæm] джем, варенье

January ['dʒænjuəri] январь

jar [dʒɑ:] банка

a jar of jam банка варенья

jeans [dʒiːnz] джинсы

job [dʒɒb] работа

jogging ['dʒɒɡɪŋ] бег разминочным темпом

join smb [dʒɔɪn] присоединиться к кому-л.

joke [dʒɒk] шутка

journey ['dʒɜːni] путешествие

to go on a journey отправиться в путешествие

juice [dʒuːs] сок

July [dʒuːlaɪ] июль

jump [dʒʌmp] прыгать

June [dʒuːn] июнь

junior ['dʒuːniə] начальный

just [dʒʌst] 1. только что 2. как раз

K

keep [ki:p] (**kept**; **kept**) держать, содержать

to keep a diary вести дневник

to keep fit поддерживать форму, быть в форме

to keep shut держать закрытым

key [ki:] ключ

kill [kɪl] убивать

kilometre ['kɪləmiːtə] километр

kind [kaɪnd] *н* род, вид; *adj* добрый

It's very kind of you. Как мило с вашей стороны.

king [kɪŋ] король

kingdom ['kɪŋdəm] королевство

kiss [kɪs] целовать

kitchen ['kɪtʃɪn] кухня

kitten ['kɪtə] котенок

knife [naɪf] (**knives** [naɪvz]) нож (ножи)

knock [nɒk] стучать

know [nəʊ] (**knew**; **known**) знать, узнавать

knowledge ['nɒlɪdʒ] знание, знания

L

ladder ['lædə] лестница (*переносная*)

lake [leɪk] озеро

lamp [læmp] лампа

land [lænd] *н* земля, суша; *с* приставать к берегу

language ['læŋgwɪʃ] язык
 large [lɑːʃ] большой
 last [lɑːst] *adj* последний, прош-
 лый
 last month в прошлом месяце
 last week на прошлой неделе
 last year в прошлом году
 last [lɑːst] *adv* в последний раз;
 и длиться
 late [leɪ] поздний
 to be late (for) опаздывать (на)
 lately ['leɪtli] недавно, за последнее
 время
 laugh [lɑːf] смеяться
 to laugh at smb/smith смеяться
 над кем-то/чем-то
 law [lɔː] закон
 lawn [lɔːn] лужайка
 lawyer ['lɔːjə] юрист, адвокат
 lazy ['leɪzi] ленивый
 lead [liːd] (led; led) вести, руково-
 дить
 leap frog ['liːpfrɒɡ] чехарда (*детская*
игра)
 to play leap frog играть в че-
 харду
 learn [lɜːn] (learnt; learnt) учить,
 узнавать
 to learn by heart учить на-
 изусть
 leave [liːv] (left; left) покидать, уез-
 жать из
 to leave for уезжать в
 to leave Rostov for Moscow уез-
 жать из Ростова в Москву
 left [left] левый
 on the left слева
 to the left налево
 leg [leg] нога (*от ступни*)
 legend ['ledʒənd] легенда

length [leŋθ] длина
 less [les] меньше
 lesson ['lesn] урок
 at/in the lesson на уроке
 letter ['letə] 1. буква 2. письмо
 liberty ['lɪbəli] свобода
 Liberty Island остров Сво-
 боды
 The Statue of Liberty Статуя
 Свободы
 library ['laɪbrəri] библиотека
 at the library в библиотеке
 lick [lɪk] лизать, облизывать
 lie [laɪ] и ложь; и лгать, говорить
 неправду
 to tell a lie лгать, говорить не-
 правду
 life [laɪf] жизнь
 like [laɪk] и любить, нравиться; *adv*
 как, подобный
 lily ['lɪli] лилия
 line [laɪn] 1. линия 2. направление
 (*железнодорожное*)
 lion ['laɪən] лев
 lip [lɪp] губа
 list [lɪst] список
 listen to smb/smith ['lɪsn] слушать
 кого-то/что-то
 literary ['lɪtərəri] литературный
 little ['lɪtl] *adj* маленький; *adv*
 мало
 a little немного
 living room ['lɪvɪŋ ruːm] живая ком-
 ната
 loaf [lɔːf] буханка
 a loaf of bread буханка хлеба
 local ['ləkl] местный, ближайший
 к дому
 at the local cinema-house в бли-
 жайшем кинотеатре

lock [lɒk] закрывать на ключ, запирать
 locked [lɒkt] закрытый на ключ
 logical ['lɒdʒɪkl] логический
 lonely ['ləʊnli] одинокий
 long [lɒŋ] длинный
 look [lʊk] смотреть, глядеть
 to look around оглядываться
 to look at смотреть на
 to look for искать
 Look over there! Посмотри вон туда!
 to look through просмотреть
 to look like выглядеть
 You look great! Ты прекрасно выглядишь!
 lord [lɔ:d] лорд
 The House of Lords палата лордов (*в парламенте*)
 Los Angeles [lə'sændʒələz] Лос-Анджелес
 lose [lʊz] (lost; lost) терять
 to be (get) lost потеряться
 lots of, a lot of [lɒts] много
 loud [laʊd] громкий
 loudly ['laʊdli] громко
 love [lʌv] *л* любовь; *в* любить
 to be in love быть влюбленным
 lovely ['lʌvli] прелестный
 luck [lʌk] удача
 Good luck! Удачи!
 lucky ['lʌki] везучий
 luggage ['lʌdʒɪ] багаж
 lump [lʌmp] кусок
 a lump of sugar кусок сахара
 lunch [lʌntʃ] второй завтрак, обед, ланч
 to have for lunch на второй завтрак/обед/ланч
 lung(s) [lʌŋ(z)] легкое (легкие)



Madrid [mə'drɪd] Мадрид
 magazine [ˌmæɡə'ziːn] журнал
 magic ['mædʒɪk] волшебный
 main [meɪn] главный, основной
 mainland ['meɪnlənd] материк
 majesty ['mædʒɪsti] величество
 His Majesty! Его величество!
 make [meɪk] (made; made) делать, заставлять
 to be made of быть сделанным из
 make up составлять
 man (men) [mæn] ([men]) мужчина (мужчины)
 manner ['mænə] правило поведения, манеры
 good manners хорошие манеры
 to have table manners уметь вести себя за столом
 many ['meni] много (*с исчисляемыми сущ.*)
 map [mæp] карта (*географическая*)
 March [mɑ:tʃ] март
 marmalade ['mɑ:mələd] мармелад, джем
 married ['mærid] женатый, замужняя
 to be married to быть замужем за, женатым на
 marry (smb) ['mæri] жениться на ком-то, выходить замуж за кого-то
 match [mætʃ] *л* матч
 match [mætʃ] *в* подобрать под пару
 material [mə'tɪəriəl] материал
 maths [mæθs] математика
 May [meɪ] май
 may [meɪ] можно

May I do it? Можно мне сделать это?
maybe ['meɪbi] возможно, может быть
me [mi:] мне, меня, мной, обо мне
meal [mi:l] трапеза, еда
 to have meals принимать пищу, есть
mean [mi:n] (**meant; meant**) 1. значить 2. иметь в виду 3. хотеть сказать
meaning ['mi:nɪŋ] значение
means (of transport) [mi:nz] средства передвижения
meat [mi:t] мясо
medicine ['medsɪn] 1. медицина (*исчисл.*) 2. лекарство (*исчисл.*)
meet [mi:t] (**met; met**) встречать, встречаться
 on meeting при встрече
member ['membə] член
memorial [mɪ'mɔ:riəl] мемориал
memory ['meməri] память
mention ['menʃn] упоминать
message ['mesɪdʒ] устное сообщение
metal ['metl] металл
method ['meθəd] метод
metre ['mi:tə] метр
Metro ['metrəʊ] метро
 to go by Metro ехать на метро
middle ['mɪdl] середина
 in the middle of smth в середине чего-то
midnight ['mɪdnaɪt] полночь
 at midnight в полночь
mild [maɪld] мягкий
militiaman [mɪ'lɪʃəmən] милиционер
milk [mɪlk] молоко
milkman ['mɪlkmən] молочник
million ['mɪljən] миллион

millionaire [ˌmɪljə'neɪə] миллионер
mineral ['mɪnərəl] минерал
ministry ['mɪnɪstri] министерство
mirror ['mɪrə] зеркало
Miss [mɪs] мисс (*незамужняя женщина*)
miss [mɪs] опаздывать, пропускать
 to miss the train (bus, plane) опоздать на поезд (автобус, самолет)
 You can't miss it! Это невозможно пропустить!
the Mississippi [ˌmɪsɪ'sɪpi] Миссисипи (*река*)
mitten ['mɪtn] варежка
mix [mɪks] мешать, смешивать
mixed [mɪkst] перемешанный
model ['mɒdl] модель
modern ['mɒdən] современный
 modern conveniences современные удобства
moment ['məʊmənt] мгновение
Monday ['mʌndɪ] понедельник
money ['mʌni] деньги
monkey ['mʌŋki] обезьяна
month [mʌnθ] месяц
monument ['mɒnjumənt] *to set* памятник кому-л.
moon [mu:n] луна
moral ['mɒrəl] мораль
more [mɔ:] больше
morning ['mɔ:niŋ] утро
 in the morning утром
 on Tuesday morning во вторник утром
morning glory [ˌmɔ:niŋ 'glɔ:ri]Morning glory
Moscow ['mɒskəʊ] Москва
most [mɒst] большинство
mother ['mʌðə] мама

Motherland ['mʌðələnd] Родина, Отчизна
mountain ['maʊntɪn] гора
mouse [maʊs] (**mice** [maɪs]) мышь (мыши)
mouth [maʊθ] рот
move [mu:v] двигаться, переезжать
move in (to) переехать в
Mr ['mɪsɪə] мистер
Mrs ['mɪsɪz] миссис (*замужняя женщина*)
Ms [mɪz] госпожа (*неизвестно, замужем или нет*)
much [mʌʃ] много
museum [mju:'ziəm] музей
music ['mju:zɪk] музыка
musical ['mju:zɪkl] *adj* музыкальный; *n* музыкальный фильм
must [mʌst] должен, должно быть
my [maɪ] мой

N

name [neɪm] *n* имя; *v* называть
narrator ['nærətə] рассказчик
nation ['neɪʃn] нация
national ['næʃnəl] национальный
nationality [næʃə'nælɪti] национальность
native ['neɪtɪv] коренной (*житель*), родной (*язык*)
natural ['nætʃrəl] естественный
nature ['neɪtʃə] природа
near [nɪə] недалеко, близко, около
near here недалеко отсюда
nearly ['niəli] почти
necessary ['nesəsəri] необходимый
neck [nek] шея
need [ni:d] нуждаться

Negro ['nɛɡrəʊ] негр
neighbour ['neɪbə] сосед
never ['nevə] никогда
It's never late to learn! Учиться никогда не поздно!
next [nekst] следующий
next to рядом с
new [nju:] новый
newspaper ['nju:spɛpə] газета
newsreel ['nju:zri:l] программа новостей
New York [nju: 'jɔ:k] Нью-Йорк
New Zealand [nju: 'zi:lənd] Новая Зеландия
nice [naɪs] милый, приятный
nickel ['nɪkl] монета в пять центов
nickname ['nɪkneɪm] прозвище
night [naɪt] ночь
at night ночью
no [nəʊ] нет
noble ['nəʊbl] благородный
nobody ['nəʊbədi] никто
nod [nɒd] *n* кивок; *v* кивать головой
noise [nɔɪz] шум
noisy ['nɔɪzi] шумный
normal ['nɔ:ml] нормальный
Normandy ['nɔ:məndi] Нормандия
north [nɔ:θ] север
in the north на севере
northeast [nɔ:θ'ɪst] северо-восток
nose [nəʊz] нос
nothing ['nɒθɪŋ] ничего
novel ['nɒvl] роман
November [nəʊvembə] ноябрь
nowadays ['naʊədəz] в настоящее время
nurse [nɜ:z] няня, санитарка, медсестра
nut [nʌt] орех



object ['ɒbdʒɪkt] предмет
obligation [ˌɒblɪˈɡeɪʃn] обязательство
occupation [ˌɒkjʊˈreɪʃn] занятие, профессия
ocean [ˈoʊʃn] океан
October [ˌɒktəʊbər] октябрь
of [ɒv] *предлог родительного падежа*
of course конечно
offend [əˈfend] обижать
offer [ˈɒfə] предлагать
office [ˈɒfɪs] офис, госучреждение, кабинет
officer [ˈɒfɪsə] офицер
official [əˈfɪʃəl] *а* государственный служащий; *adj* официальный
often [ˈɒfn] часто
oh [əʊ] ой
Oh, my! Боже мой!
Oh, no! *восклицание сожаления*
oil [ɔɪ] растительное масло
OK [ˌɒʊˈkeɪ] нормально; так, как надо
old [əʊld] старый
on [ɒn] на
once [wʌns] однажды
open [ˈəʊpən] открывать
opera [ˈɒpərə] опера
opinion [əˈpɪnɪən] мнение
opposite [əˈpɒzɪt] напротив
optimism [ˈɒptɪmɪz(ə)zɪm] оптимизм
or [ɔː] или
orange [ˈɒrɪndʒ] апельсин
orange juice [ˈɒrɪndʒ dʒuːs] апельсиновый сок
order [ˈɔːdə] порядок
in order по порядку

other [ˈʌðə] другой, другие
the other day на днях
the other way round наоборот
ought to [ˈɔːt ˈtuː] быть должным, морально обязанным
our [aʊə] наш
outdoors [aʊtˈdɔːz] на свежем воздухе
out loud [aʊt ˈlaʊd] вслух
over [ˈəʊvə] над
to be over заканчиваться
overcoat [ˈəʊvəkəʊt] пальто
own [əʊn] собственный



the Pacific Ocean [ˈpæsɪfɪk ˈəʊʃn] Тихий океан
packet [ˈpækɪt] пакет, пачка
page [peɪdʒ] страница
pain [peɪn] боль
paint [peɪnt] рисовать красками
painting [ˈpeɪntɪŋ] картина
pair [peə] пара
a pair of shoes пара туфель
to work in pairs работать в парах
rajamas [ˈrædʒɪmɑːz] пижама
palace [ˈpælɪs] дворец
pancake [ˈpænkeɪk] блин
paper [ˈpeɪpə] 1. бумага 2. газета
papers [ˈpeɪpəz] 1. газеты, журналы 2. документы
paragraph [ˈpærəɡrɑːf] параграф
Paris [ˈpærɪs] Париж
parliament [ˈpɑːləmənt] парламент
parrot [ˈpærət] попугай
part [pɑːt] *и* 1. роль 2. часть; *в* участвовать

to take part принимать участие
party ['pɑ:ti] вечеринка
at the party на вечеринке
pass [pɑ:s] передавать
passage ['pæsɪdʒ] коридор
passenger ['pɑ:sɪndʒə] пассажир
past [pɑ:st] после
at 10 past 8 в 10 минут девятого
patient ['peɪʃənt] пациент
pay (for smth) [peɪ] (paid; paid) платить (за что-то)
PE (Physical Education) [pi:'eɪ] физкультура
peace [pi:s] мир
peaceful ['pi:sfʊl] мирный
Peking [ˌpi:'kiŋ] Пекин
pen [pen] ручка
pencil ['pensl] карандаш
to draw in pencil рисовать карандашом
penny ['penɪ] пенни (*монета*)
people ['pi:pl] люди, народ
pepper ['pepə] перец
perform [pə'fɔ:m] представлять, играть
performance [pə'fɔ:məns] представление, спектакль
performer [pə'fɔ:mə] исполнитель
perhaps [pə'hæps] возможно
permanent ['pɜ:mənənt] постоянный
person ['pɜ:sn] человек, личность
personal ['pɜ:snəl] личный
pet [pet] любимое животное
petal ['petl] лепесток
phone [fəʊn] звонить по телефону
photo ['fəʊtəʊ] фотография
to take photos снимать (*фотоаппаратом*)

phrase [freɪz] фраза
piano ['pi:ənoʊ] пианино
to play the piano играть на пианино
picture ['pɪktʃə] 1. картина 2. фотография
in the picture на картине
to take pictures снимать фотоаппаратом
piece [pi:s] кусок
pig [pɪg] поросенок
pillow ['pɪləʊ] подушка
pirate ['paɪəɪt] пират
pity ['pɪti] жалость
That's a pity! Какая жалость!
place [pleɪs] место
place of interest достопримечательность
plan [pleɪn] план
plane [pleɪn] самолет
by plane самолетом
planet ['plænt] планета
plantation [plæn'teɪʃn] плантация
plate [pleɪt] тарелка
platform ['plætfɔ:m] платформа (*железнодорожная*)
play [pleɪ] играть
to play a part играть роль
to play snowballs играть в снежки
pleasant ['plezənt] приятный
pleasure ['pleʒə] удовольствие
Plymouth ['plɪməθ] Плимут (*город*)
pocket ['pɒkɪt] карман
poem ['pəʊm] стихотворение, поэма
police [pə'li:s] полиция
police officer офицер полиции
policeman [pə'li:smən] полицейский
polite [pə'laɪt] вежливый

politician [ˌpɒlɪˈtʃɪn] политик
politics [ˈpɒlɪtiks] политика
poor [pʊə] бедный
poppy [ˈpɒpi] мак
popular with smb [ˈpɒpjələ] популяр-
 ный среди *кого-то*
pork [pɔ:k] свинина
porridge [ˈpɒrɪdʒ] каша (овсяная)
port [pɔ:t] порт
portrait [ˈpɔ:trɪt] портрет
possible [ˈpɒsɪbl] возможный
post office [ˈpəʊst ɒfɪs] почта
postman [ˈpəʊstmən] почтальон
potato (potatoes) [ˈpəʊtəʊ] картофе-
 лина (картофель)
pound [paʊnd] 1. единица веса
 (450 г) 2. фунт стерлингов
 (английская денежная еди-
 ница)
power [ˈpaʊə] власть
practise in [ˈpræktɪs] практиковать-
 ся в
preparation [ˌpreprəˈtʃʃən] пригото-
 вление
prepare for smth [prɪˈpeə] готовить-
 ся к *чему-то*
preposition [ˌpreprəˈzɪʃn] предлог
prescribe [prɪˈskraɪb] прописывать
 to **prescribe a medicine for smth**
 прописывать лекарство от *че-
 го-то*
present [ˈpreznt] настоящее
president [ˈprezɪd(ə)nt] президент
pressure [ˈpreʃə] давление
blood pressure кровяное давле-
 ние
pretend [prɪˈtend] притворяться
pretty [ˈprɪti] *adj* хорошенький; *adv*
 довольно, весьма
Pretty bad! Очень плохо!

previous [ˈpri:vɪəs] предыдущий
price [praɪs] цена
primrose [ˈprɪmɹɔ:z] примула
prince [prɪns] принц, князь
princess [ˌprɪnˈses] принцесса
prize [praɪz] приз
probably [ˈprɒbəbli] возможно
problem [ˈprɒbləm] проблема
profession [ˌprəˈfeɪʃn] профессия
programme [ˈprəʊɡræm] программа
progressive [ˌprɒˈɡresɪv] прогрессив-
 ный
promise [ˈpromɪs] обещать
pronunciation [ˌprɒnənsɪˈeɪʃn] прона-
 ношение
proper [ˈprɒpə] соответствующий
proper form соответствующая
 форма
proper name имя собственное
protect [prəˈtekt] защищать
proud [praʊd] гордый
to be proud of smb/smt гордиться
 кем-то/чем-то
prove [pru:v] доказывать
proverb [ˈprɒvɜ:b] пословица
public [ˈpʌblɪk] публика
pulse [pʌls] пульс
punish [ˈpʌnɪʃ] наказывать
punishment [ˈpʌnɪʃmənt] наказа-
 ние
pupil [ˈpjʊpl] ученик
puppy [ˈpʌpi] щенок
pure [pjʊə] чистый
purple [ˈpɜ:pl] фиолетовый
put [pʊt] (**put**; **put**) класть
to put down записывать
to put on smth надевать *что-то*
to put smth in order расположить
 по порядку
puzzle [ˈpʌzl] головоломка

Q

qualification [ˌkwɒlɪfɪˈkeɪʃn] квалификация

quarter ['kwɔ:tə] 1. четверть 2. монета в 25 центов

at a quarter past 5 в четверть шестого

at a quarter to 5 в без четверти пять

queen [kwi:n] королева

question ['kwɛstʃən] вопрос

quick [kwɪk] быстрый

quickly ['kwɪkli] быстро

quiet ['kwaɪət] спокойный, тихий

quotation [kwɔ:ʃeɪʃn] цитата

quote [kwəʊt] цитировать

R

race [reɪs] соревнование в беге, гонках

to run a race участвовать в гонках

radio ['reɪdɪəʊ] радио

railway ['reɪlweɪ] железная дорога

railway station железнодорожная станция, вокзал

at the railway station на (железнодорожной) станции, вокзале

rain [reɪn] дождь

It often rains here. Здесь часто идет дождь.

It is raining hard now. Сейчас идет сильный дождь.

raincoat ['reɪnkoʊt] дождевик, плащ от дождя

rainy ['reɪni] дождливый

rather ['rʌðə] довольно

raven ['reɪvən] ворон

reach [ri:tʃ] достигать

react [rɪˈækt] реагировать

read [ri:d] (**read; read**) читать

to read to oneself читать про себя

Read to yourself! Читай про себя!

reader ['ri:ðə] читатель

ready ['redi] готовый

real [ri:əl] реальный, действительный

really ['ri:əli] действительно

reason ['ri:zn] причина

receive [rɪˈsi:v] 1. получать 2. принимать (людей)

recently ['ri:sntli] недавно

recognize ['rɛkəɡnaɪz] узнавать

recover [rɪˈkʌvə] поправиться

red [red] красный, рыжий

refer [rɪˈfɜ:] относить, отсылать

reference material ['refrɛns] справочный материал

referring to [rɪˈfɜ:ɪŋ] относящийся к

refuse [rɪˈfju:z] отказывать(ся)

regular verbs ['regjʊlə 'vɜ:bz] правильные глаголы

regularly ['regjʊləli] регулярно

regulation [ˌregjʊləˈeɪʃn] инструкция

relation [rɪˈleɪʃn] родственник

relative [rɪˈleɪv] родственник

relax [rɪˈlæks] расслабляться

relaxation [ˌrɪlæksəˈeɪʃn] расслабление

remember [rɪˈmembə] помнить

reported [rɪˈpɔ:tɪd] сообщенный, переданный

reported speech косвенная речь
respectable [rɪ'spektəbl] уважае-
мый

rest [rest] *н* отдых; *в* отдыхать

restaurant ['rest(ə)rɒŋ] ресторан

retell [ri'tel] пересказывать

return [ri'tɜ:n] возвращаться

review [ri'vju:] повторять

revue [ri'vju:] обозрение

rhyming twin ['raɪmɪŋ twɪn] слово,
звучащее в рифму

rice [raɪs] рис

rich [rɪʃ] богатый

ride [raɪd] (**rode**; **ridden**) ехать на
(*велосипеде, лошади*)

right [raɪt] 1. правильный 2. пра-
вый

on the right справа

to the right направо

Say it right. Скажи правильно.

rise [raɪz] (**rose**; **risen**) вставать, под-
ниматься

river ['rɪvə] река

road [rəʊd] дорога

rocket ['rɒkɪt] ракета

role play ['rɔ:l pleɪ] разыгрывать по
ролям

round [raʊnd] круглый

round-up lessons уроки повторе-
ния

row [rəʊ] грести

rowing ['rəʊɪŋ] гребля

royal ['rɔ:əl] королевский

rubber ['rʌbə] ластик

ruins ['ruɪnz] руины

rule [ru:l] *н* правило; *в* править, уп-
равлять

as a rule как правило

ruler ['ru:lə] линейка

run [rʌn] (**ran**; **run**) бегать

3

sad [sæd] печальный

to look sad выглядеть печальным

sadly ['sædli] печально

sail [seɪl] *н* парус; *в* плыть под па-
русом

sailor ['seɪlə] матрос

saint (snt., st) [seɪnt] ([snt]) святой

salesman ['seɪlzmən] продавец

salt [sɔ:lt] соль

salty ['sɔ:ltɪ] соленый

same [seɪm] тот же самый, такой же

sandals ['sænd(ə)lz] босоножки

sandwich ['sænwɪdʒ] бутерброд

San Francisco [sæn frən'sɪskəʊ] Сан-
Франциско

Saturday ['sætədɪ] суббота

sauce [sɔ:s] соус

save [seɪv] 1. спасать 2. экономить,
откладывать

say [seɪ] сказать

to say to smb сказать кому-л.

to say it for smb сказать за ко-
го-л.

seacrow ['si:kraʊ] чучело

scenery ['si:nəri] декорации

school [sku:l] школа

to go to school ходить в школу

science [saɪəns] наука

scientific [saɪəntɪfɪk] научный

scientist ['saɪəntɪst] ученый

Scotland ['skɒtlənd] Шотландия

screen [skri:n] экран

sculpture ['skʌltʃə] скульптура

sea [si:] море

seaman ['si:mən] моряк

seaside ['si:saɪd] побережье моря

at the seaside на море

to go to the seaside поехать на
 побережье
 reason ['ri:zn] сезон, время года
 seat [si:t] место
 secretary ['sekrtəri] секретарь
 section ['sekʃn] раздел
 see [si:] (saw; seen) видеть
 See you later. Увидимся позже.
 Let me see. Дай подумать.
 seed(s) [si:d(z)] зернышки, семена
 seem [sim] казаться
 seldom ['seldəm] редко
 selfish ['selfiʃ] эгоистичный
 sell [sel] (sold; sold) продавать
 send [send] (sent; sent) посылать
 sense [sens] чувство
 a sense of humour чувство юмо-
 ра
 sentence ['sentəns] предложение
 separate ['sepəreit] отделять
 September [səptembə] сентябрь
 serious ['sɪəriəs] серьезный
 seriously ['sɪəriəʃli] серьезно
 set [set] (set; set) 1. накрывать
 2. садиться (о солнце)
 to set the table накрывать на
 стол
 settlement ['setlmənt] поселение, по-
 селок
 several (times) ['sevrəl] несколько
 (раз)
 shake [feik] (shook; shaken) трясти
 to shake a head покачать голо-
 вой
 to shake hands with smb пожать
 руку кому-то
 to shake smb by the shoulder по-
 трясти кого-то за плечо
 shall [ʃæl] буду, будем, будут
 Shall I do it? Мне сделать это?

shave [ʃeiv] бриться
 she [ʃi:] она
 sheep (sheep) [ʃi:p] овца (овцы)
 sheet [ʃi:t] простыня
 ship [ʃip] корабль
 to go by ship ехать кораблем
 on board the ship на борту ко-
 рабля
 shirt [ʃɜ:t] рубашка
 shoe [ʃu:] (shoes) ботинок (ботинки)
 shop [ʃɒp] и магазин; и ходить в ма-
 газин
 to do the shopping делать покуп-
 ки, ходить в магазин
 to go shopping делать покупки
 shop assistant ['ʃɒp əsɪstənt] прода-
 вец
 short [ʃɔ:t] короткий
 shorts [ʃɔ:ts] шорты
 shoulder ['ʃəʊldə] плечо
 shout at smb [ʃaʊt] кричать на ко-
 го-л.
 show [ʃəʊ] и представление; и пока-
 зывать
 to show off красоваться, рисо-
 ваться
 shower [ˈʃaʊə] душ
 to have/take a shower принимать
 душ
 Siberia [saɪ'bɪəriə] Сибирь
 sick [sɪk] больной
 side [saɪd] 1. сторона 2. бок
 sign [saɪn] и знак; и подписывать
 silk [sɪlk] шелк
 silver ['sɪlvə] и серебро; adj серебря-
 ный
 since [sɪns] с тех пор как
 sing [sɪŋ] (sang; sung) петь
 to sing to the music петь под му-
 зыку

single (ticket) ['sɪŋɡl] билет в одном направлении

sink [sɪŋk] раковина

sister ['sɪstə] сестра

sitting room ['sɪtɪŋ ru:m] гостиная

situated ['sɪtʃu:etɪd] расположенный

to be situated располагаться

situation [sɪtʃu'eɪʃn] ситуация

size [saɪz] размер

What size shoes do you wear?

Туфли какого размера вы носите?

skate [skeɪt] *n* (skates) конек (коньки); *v* кататься на коньках

ski [ski] *n* (skis) лыжа (лыжи); *v* кататься на лыжах

skin [skɪn] кожа, шкура

skip [skɪp] прыгать через веревочку

skirt [skɜ:t] юбка

slave [sleɪv] раб

sledge [sledʒ] *n* санки; *v* кататься на санках

sleep [sli:p] *n* сон; *v* (slept; slept) спать

slice [slaɪs] тонкий кусочек

slim [slɪm] стройный

slow [sləʊ] медленный

slowly ['sləʊli] медленно

smell [smel] *n* запах; *v* (smelt; smelt) пахнуть

smoke [sməʊk] *n* дым; *v* курить

snail [sneɪl] улитка

snake [sneɪk] змея

sneeze [sni:z] чихать

snow [snəʊ] снег

It often snows here. Здесь часто идет снег.

It is snowing hard. Идет сильный снег.

snowball ['snəʊbɔ:l] снежок

snowdrop ['snəʊdrɒp] подснежник

snowman ['snəʊmæn] снеговик

to make a snowman лепить снеговика

so [səʊ] так, итак

soap opera ['səʊp ɒpə] многосерийный телесериал

sofa ['səʊfə] диван

soft [sɒft] мягкий

soft-boiled eggs [sɒft'bɔɪld eɡz] яйца всмятку

soft drink ['sɒft drɪŋk] безалкогольный напиток

soldier ['səʊldʒə] солдат

some [səm] некоторые, несколько

somebody ['sʌmbədi] кто-нибудь

something ['sʌmθɪŋ] что-нибудь

sometimes ['sʌmtaɪnz] иногда

son [sʌn] сын

song [sɒŋ] песня

Sorry! [sɒpɪ] Извините!

to be sorry сожалеть о (чем-то)

soul [səʊl] душа

sound [saʊnd] *n* звук; *v* звучать

That sounds good! Звучит заманчиво!

soup [sup] суп

sour cream [saʊə 'kri:m] сметана

south [saʊθ] юг

space [speɪs] 1. космос 2. пространство

spaceship ['speɪʃɪp] космический корабль

Spain [speɪn] Испания

Spanish ['spæɪnɪ] испанский

speak [spi:k] (spoke; spoken) разговаривать

special ['speʃl] специальный

specialist ['speʃlɪst] специалист

specialize ['speʃəlaɪz] специализироваться
spell [spel] (spelt; spelt) писать; называть по буквам
spelling ['speliŋ] правописание
spend [spend] (spent; spent) тратить; проводить (время)
to spend money on *smth* тратить деньги на *что-то*
spices ['speɪsɪz] специи
spoon [spuːn] ложка
sport [spɔːt] спорт
sports ground ['spɔːts graʊnd] спортивная площадка
spy [spaɪ] шпион
square [skweə] *n* площадь; *adj* квадратный
in the square на площади
stadium ['steɪdiəm] стадион
stage [steɪdʒ] *n* сцена; *v* ставить на сцене
on the stage на сцене
stairs [steəz] лестница
stalls [stɔːlz] партер
in the stalls в партере
stamp [stæmp] марка
stand [stænd] (stood; stood) стоять
standard lamp ['stændəd læmp] торшер
star [stɑː] 1. звезда 2. кинозвезда
start [stɑːt] *n* начало; *v* начинать
state [steɪt] 1. штат 2. государство
statement ['steɪtmənt] утверждение
statue ['statjuː] статуя
stay [steɪ] 1. останавливаться 2. оставаться
to stay at a hotel останавливаться в отеле
to stay with *smb* останавливаться у *кого-то*

steal [stiːl] (stole; stolen) красть, воровать
still [stiːl] все еще
stone [stəʊn] камень
stop [stɒp] *n* остановка; *v* останавливаться
store [stɔː] магазин (большой)
storm [stɔːm] шторм, буря
a storm of applause шквал аплодисментов
story [stɔːri] история, рассказ
straight [streɪt] прямой
straight ahead прямо вперед
strange [streɪndʒ] странный, необычный
straw [strɔː] солома
strength [streŋθ] сила
stripe [straɪp] полоса
strong [strɒŋ] сильный
student ['stjuːdənt] студент, учащийся
study ['stʌdi] *n* кабинет; *v* изучать
subject ['sʌbdʒɪkt] предмет
success [sək'ses] успех
to be a success иметь успех
to have success иметь успех
suddenly ['sʌdnli] вдруг
suffer from страдать от
sugar ['ʃʊɡə] сахар
sugary ['ʃʊɡəri] 1. сахаристый 2. сладкий
suit [sjuːt] подходить, устраивать
It suits you well. Тебе это хорошо подходит.
summer ['sʌmə] лето
sun [sʌn] солнце
Sunday ['sʌndi] воскресенье
on Sunday в воскресенье
sunglasses ['sʌŋɡləsɪz] солнечные очки

sunny ['sʌni] солнечный
 supermarket ['sjʊərəma:kit] универ-
 сам
 supper ['sʌpə] ужин
 to have for supper на ужин
 sure [ʃʊə] уверенный
 to be sure of быть уверенным в
 surname ['z:neim] фамилия
 surprise [səpraiz] удивление
 swallow ['swɒləʊ] глотать
 sweater ['swetə] свитер
 sweet [swi:t] л. конфета; *adj* сладкий
 swim [swim] (swam; swum) плавать
 swimming pool ['swimɪŋ pu:l] плава-
 тельный бассейн
 symbol ['simbl] символ
 symptom ['sɪmptəm] симптом
 synonym ['sinənim] синоним

T

table ['teɪbl] 1. стол 2. таблица
 table tennis ['teɪbl 'tenɪs] настольный
 теннис
 tail [teɪl] хвост
 tailor ['teɪlə] портной
 take [teɪk] (took; taken) брать
 to take a bus (train, plane) сесть
 на автобус (поезд, самолет)
 to take off снимать
 to take pictures делать фотогра-
 фин, фотографировать
 It takes me 5 minutes to get there.
 Мне нужно 5 минут, чтобы до-
 браться туда.
 tale [teɪl] рассказ, история, повесть
 talk [tɔ:k] беседовать, болтать
 tall [tɔ:l] высокий
 tape [teɪp] пленка

on the tape на пленке
 tasty ['teɪsti] вкусный
 taxes ['tæksɪz] налоги
 taxi ['tæksi] такси
 tea [ti:] чай
 teach [ti:tʃ] (taught; taught) обучать,
 учить (кого-л.)
 teacher ['ti:tʃə] учитель
 team [ti:m] команда
 telegramme ['telɪɡræm] телеграмма
 television ['telɪvɪʒn] 1. телеаппарат
 2. телевидение
 tell [tel] (told; told) говорить
 to tell smb about smth сказать
 кому-то что-то
 to tell a lie солгать
 to tell the truth сказать правду
 to tell fairy tales рассказывать
 сказки
 temperature ['temprətʃə] темпера-
 тура
 to have/run a high temperature
 иметь высокую температуру
 to take one's temperature изме-
 рять чью-то температуру
 tennis ['tenɪs] теннис
 tennis day день игры в теннис
 terrible ['terəbl] ужасный
 terribly ['terəblɪ] ужасно
 territory ['terɪtɔ:ri] территория
 the Thames [temz] Темза
 than [ðən] чем
 that [ðæt] тот, та, то
 the [ðə], [ði] определенный артикль
 theatre ['θi:ətə] театр
 at the theatre в театре
 theatre-goer ['θi:ətəgəʊə] театрал
 their [ðeə] их (чей?)
 them [ðem] им, о них, их (кого?)
 thematic [θə'mæti:k] тематический

theme [θi:m] тема
 then [ðen] тогда, затем
 there [ðeə] там
 these [ði:z] эти
 they [ðei] они
 They say... Говорят...
 thing [θɪŋ] вещь
 think [θɪŋk] (thought; thought) думать
 thirsty ['θɜ:sti] жаждущий пить
 to be thirsty хотеть пить
 this [ðɪs] этот, эта, это
 this Monday в этот понедельник
 though [ðəʊ] хотя
 thought [θɔ:t] мысль
 thousand ['θaʊzənd] тысяча
 throat [θrəʊt] горло
 to have a sore throat иметь больное горло
 through [θru:] сквозь, через
 to look through просматривать
 through train экспресс
 throw [θrəʊ] (threw; thrown) бросать
 Thursday ['θɜ:zdi] четверг
 ticket ['tɪkɪt] билет
 a ticket to a city билет до города
 a ticket for a play (for a train) билет на спектакль (на поезд)
 a single ticket билет в одном направлении
 a return ticket билет в оба конца
 a ticket office билетная касса
 tidy ['taɪdi] аккуратный, опрятный
 tie [taɪ] а галстук; в завязывать
 tiger ['taɪgə] тигр
 tights [taɪts] колготки
 time I [taɪm] время

time II [taɪm] раз
 3 times a day 3 раза в день
 timetable ['taɪmti:bl] расписание
 on the timetable в расписании
 tin [tɪn] консервная банка
 a tin of meat банка мясных консервов
 tired [taɪəd] усталый
 to be tired быть усталым
 title ['taɪtl] заглавие
 tobacco [tə'bækəʊ] табак
 toe [təʊ] палец ноги
 together [tə'geðə] вместе
 toilet ['tɔɪlɪt] туалет
 tomorrow [tə'mɒrəʊ] завтра
 tongue [tʌŋ] язык
 tonight [tə'naɪt] сегодня вечером
 tonsillitis [tɒnsɪ'laitɪs] ангина
 too [tu:] 1. тоже 2. слишком
 tooth [tu:θ] (teeth [ti:θ]) зуб (зубы)
 toothbrush ['tu:θbrʌʃ] зубная щетка
 toothpaste ['tu:θpeɪst] зубная паста
 top [tɒp] вершина
 at the top of *smith* на вершине *с-ла*
 topic ['tɒpɪk] тема
 tortoise [tɔ:tɪs] черепаха
 tourism ['tuəɪzəm] туризм
 tourist ['tuəɪst] турист
 tourist class второй класс на самолете
 towel [taʊəl] полотенце
 tower [taʊə] башня
 town [taʊn] город (любой)
 in town в городе
 out of town вне города
 tractor ['træktə] трактор
 tradition [trə'dɪʃn] традиция
 traditional [trə'dɪʃnəl] традиционный
 traffic ['træfɪk] движение (уличное)

There is a lot of traffic here. Здесь сильное движение.
traffic lights ['træfɪk laɪts] светофор

train I [treɪn] *н* поезд
by train поездом
to get on a train сесть в поезд
to get off a train сойти с поезда
on the train в поезде
to take (catch) a train успеть на поезд, сесть на поезд

train II [treɪn] *в* тренировать(ся)
trainers ['treɪnɪz] кроссовки
training ['treɪnɪŋ] тренировка
transport ['trænsɪpɔ:t] транспорт
travel ['trævl] путешествовать
to travel by smith путешествовать на чем-то
to travel east путешествовать на восток

traveller ['trævlɪə] путешественник
trip [trɪp] поездка, короткое путешествие
to go on a trip поехать в путешествие

trolleybus ['trɒlɪbʌs] троллейбус
trouble ['trʌbl] *н* беда, неприятность;
в беспокойство

true [tru:] правдивый
try [traɪ] пытаться, пробовать, стараться
to try on примерять

Tuesday ['tju:zdi] вторник

tunnel ['tʌnl] туннель

turkey ['tɜ:kɪ] индюшка

turn [tɜ:n] поворачивать
to turn to the left поворачивать налево
to turn to the right поворачивать направо

to turn off выключать
to turn on включать
TV [ti'vi:] телевизор
twice [twɑɪs] дважды
type [taɪp] печатать
typist ['taɪpɪst] машинистка

U

ugly [ʌgɪ] некрасивый, уродливый
uncle ['ʌŋkl] дядя

uncomfortable [ʌn'kʌmfɪtəbl] неудобный

uncountable [ʌn'kaʊntəbl] неисчисляемое

under ['ʌndə] под
underground ['ʌndəgraʊnd] метро, подземка
to take the underground ехать на метро

underline [ʌndə'laɪn] подчеркивать
underlined word подчеркнутое слово

understand [ʌndə'stænd] (**understood; understood**) понимать

uneasy [ʌn'i:zi] нелегкий

unfinished [ʌn'fɪnɪʃt] незаконченный

unfortunately [ʌn'fɔ:tʃənətli] к несчастью

unfriendly [ʌn'frendli] недружелюбный

unhappy [ʌn'hæpi] несчастливый

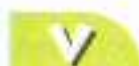
uniform ['ju:nɪfɔ:m] форма

unimportant [ʌnɪm'pɔ:tnt] неважный

the United States of America (the United States) Соединенные Штаты Америки

unkind [ʌn'kaɪnd] недобрый

unnoticed [ʌn'nɒtɪst] незамеченный
untrue [ʌn'truː] лживый, неверный
up [ʌp] вверх
upper [ʌpə] верхний
upstairs [ʌp'staɪz] наверх
us [ʌs] нас, нам, о нас
the USA (the US) США
use [juːz] использовать, употреблять
useful [juːsfʊl] полезный
used to [juːst] иметь обыкновение де-
 лать что-то в прошлом
I used to do it. Я обычно делал
 это.
using [juːzɪŋ] используя



vacation [və'keɪʃn] каникулы
vacuum cleaner ['vækjuəm ,kliːnə] пы-
 лосос
vegetable ['vedʒtəbl] овощ
version ['vɜːʃn] версия, вариант
very [veri] очень
victory ['vɪktəri] победа
to win a victory выиграть побе-
 ду, победить
a victory over the enemy победа
 над врагом
to lead the army to victory ве-
 сти армию к победе
video ['vɪdiəʊ] видео
village ['vɪlɪdʒ] деревня
vinegar ['vɪnɪɡə] уксус
violin [vaɪəlɪn] скрипка
to play the violin играть на
 скрипке
visit ['vɪzɪt] *л* посещение, визит; *в*
 посещать
a visiting day день посещения

vocabulary [və'kæbjʊləri] словарь
voice [vɔɪs] голос
in a quiet voice тихим голосом
volleyball ['vɒlibɔːl] волейбол
to play volleyball играть в волей-
 бол
voyage ['vɔɪdʒ] путешествие (*морем,*
рекой)
to go on a voyage поехать в мор-
 ское путешествие



wake up ['weɪk 'ʌp] (**woke up; woken**
up) просыпаться
walk [wɔːk] *л* прогулка; *в* идти гу-
 лять, ходить пешком, гулять
to walk barefoot [wɔːk 'beəfʊt] хо-
 дить босиком
wall [wɔːl] стена
want [wɒnt] хотеть
war [wɔː] война
a war against smb война против
 кого-л.
to be at war быть на войне
to go to war идти на войну
wardrobe ['wɔːdrəʊb] платяной шкаф
warm [wɔːm] теплый
warmth [wɔːmθ] теплота, тепло
wash [wɒʃ] мыть(ся), стирать
to wash up мыть посуду
washing day ['wɒʃɪŋ deɪ] день
 стирки
washing machine ['wɒʃɪŋ məʃiːn] сти-
 ральная машина
watch [wɒtʃ] *л* часы (*ручные*); *в* смо-
 треть, наблюдать
to watch TV смотреть телевизор
water ['wɔːtə] *л* вода; *в* поливать

way [weɪ] 1. путь, дорога 2. способ, образ

It's a long way. Далеко.

a way of life стиль, образ жизни

we [wi] мы

weak [wi:k] слабый

wealth [welθ] богатство

wealthy ['welθi] богатый

wear [weə] (wore; worn) носить

weather ['weðə] погода

Wednesday ['wenzdi] среда

on Wednesday в среду

week [wi:k] неделя

weekend ['wi:kend] конец недели

at the weekend в конце недели

welcome ['welkəm] приветствовать, радушно принимать

You're welcome! Добро пожаловать!

well [wel] хороший, здоровый

west [west] запад

what [wɒt] что, какой

What about you? А как ты?

What a good book! Какая хорошая книга!

What's on? Что идет в кино? по телевизору?

What's the time? Сколько времени?

whatever [wʌt'evə] что бы ни было

when [wen] когда

When's the best time to...? Когда лучше...?

whenever [wen'evə] когда бы ни было

where [weə] где, куда

wherever [weə'evə] где бы ни было, куда бы ни было

which [wɪtʃ] который из

which of you кто из вас

Which one? Какой? Который?

while [waɪl] пока, в то время как

whisper ['wɪspə] шепот; *v* шептать

white [waɪt] белый

who [hu:] кто

whoever [hu:'evə] кто бы ни был

whole [həʊl] целый, весь

whom [hʊm] кого, кому, кем, о ком

whose [hu:z] чей

why [waɪ] 1. почему, зачем 2. в чем дело

Why don't you...? Почему ты не...?

wide [waɪd] широкий

widespread ['waɪdspred] широко распространенный

width [wɪð] ширина

wife [waɪf] жена

wild [waɪld] дикий

win [wɪn] (won; won) выигрывать, побеждать

wind [waɪnd] ветер

windy ['waɪndi] ветреный

window ['wɪndəʊ] окно

wing [wɪŋ] крыло

winner ['wɪnə] победитель

winter ['wɪntə] зима

wise [waɪz] мудрый

wish [wɪʃ] желать

witch [wɪtʃ] ведьма

with [wɪð] с

without [wɪðaʊt] без

wolf [wʊlf] (wolves [wʊlvz]) волк (волки)

woman ['wʊmən] (women ['wɪmɪn]) женщина (женщины)

wonder ['wʌndə] *n* чудо; *v* удивляться, интересоваться

I wonder... Интересно...

wonderful [ˈwʌndəfʊl] удивительный,
замечательный

wood [wʊd] 1. дерево 2. лес

wooden [ˈwʊdn] деревянный

wool [wʊl] шерсть

woollen [ˈwʊln] шерстяной

word [wɜ:d] слово

work [wɜ:k] н работа; в работать

work of art произведение искус-
ства

work of fiction произведение
художественной литературы

worker [ˈwɜ:kə] рабочий

world [wɜ:ld] мир, свет, вселенная
all over the world по всему
свету

worry [ˈwʌri] беспокоиться, му-
читься

worse [wɜ:s] хуже

the worst самый плохой

wrap [ræp] заворачивать

write [raɪt] (wrote; written) писать

writer [ˈraɪtə] писатель

written [ˈrɪtn] написанный

in written form письменно

wrong [rʌŋ] неправильный



year [jɜ:] год

yellow [ˈjeləʊ] желтый

yesterday [ˈjestədi] вчера

yet [jet] 1. еще 2. уже

you [ju:] ты, вы

You are back. Ты вернулся.

You don't say so! Не может быть!

You see. Видишь ли.

young [jʌŋ] молодой

your [jɔ:] твой, ваш



zoo [zu:] зоопарк

at the zoo в зоопарке

IRREGULAR VERBS

be [bi:] was [wɒz], were [wɜ:] been [bi:n]

become [bi'kʌm] became [bi'keɪm] become [bi'kʌm]

begin [bi'ɡɪn] began [bi'ɡæn] begun [bi'ɡʌn]

blow [bləʊ] blew [blu:] blown [blɔ:n]

bring [brɪŋ] brought [brɔ:t] brought [brɔ:t]

build [bɪld] built [bɪlt] built [bɪlt]

burn [bɜ:n] burnt [bɜ:nt] (burned) burnt [bɜ:nt] (burned)

buy [baɪ] bought [bɔ:t] bought [bɔ:t]

catch [kætʃ] caught [kɔ:t] caught [kɔ:t]

choose [tʃu:z] chose [tʃɔ:z] chosen [tʃaʊən]

come [kʌm] came [keɪm] come [kʌm]

cost [kɒst] cost [kɒst] cost [kɒst]

do [du:] did [dɪd] done [dʌn]

draw [drɔ:] drew [dru:] drawn [dra:n]

drink [drɪŋk] drank [dɹæŋk] drunk [drʌŋk]

eat [i:t] ate [et] eaten [i:tɪn]

fall [fɔ:l] fell [fel] fallen [fɔ:lɪn]

feel [fi:l] felt [felt] felt [felt]

fight [faɪt] fought [fɔ:t] fought [fɔ:t]

find [faɪnd] found [faʊnd] found [faʊnd]

fly [flaɪ] flew [flu:] flown [flɔ:n]

forget [fə'ɡet] forgot [fə'ɡɒt] forgot-ten [fə'ɡɒtɪn]

get [ɡet] got [ɡɒt] got [ɡɒt]

give [ɡɪv] gave [ɡeɪv] given [ɡɪvɪn]

go [ɡəʊ] went [wenɪ] gone [ɡɒn]

grow [ɡrəʊ] grew [ɡru:] grown [ɡrɔ:n]

have [hæv] had [həd] had [həd]

hear [hɜ:] heard [hɜ:d] heard [hɜ:d]

hide [haɪd] hid [hɪd] hidden [hɪdn]

hold [həʊld] held [held] held [held]

hurt [hɜ:t] hurt [hɜ:t] hurt [hɜ:t]

keep [ki:p] kept [kept] kept [kept]

know [nəʊ] knew [nju:] known [nɔ:n]

lead [li:d] led [led] led [led]

learn [lɜ:n] learnt [lɜ:nt] (learned) learnt [lɜ:nt] (learned)

leave [li:v] left [left] left [left]

lie [laɪ] lay [leɪ] lain [leɪn]

lose [lu:z] lost [lɒst] lost [lɒst]

make [meɪk] made [meɪd] made [meɪd]

mean [mi:n] meant [ment] meant [ment]

meet [mi:t] met [met] met [met]

pay [peɪ] paid [peɪd] paid [peɪd]

put [pʊt] put [pʊt] put [pʊt]

read [ri:d] read [red] read [red]

ride [raɪd] rode [rɔ:d] ridden [rɪdn]

rise [raɪz] rose [rɔ:z] risen [rɪzn]

run [rʌn] ran [rɛn] run [rʌn]

say [seɪ] said [sed] said [sed]

see [si:] saw [sɔ:] seen [si:n]

sell [sel] sold [sɔ:ld] sold [sɔ:ld]

send [send] sent [sent] sent [sent]

set [set] set [set] set [set]

shake [ʃeɪk] shook [ʃʊk] shaken [ʃeɪkən]

shine [ʃaɪn] shone [ʃɒn] shone [ʃɒn]

sing [sɪŋ] sang [sæŋ] sung [sʌŋ]

sleep [sli:p] slept [slept] slept [slept]

smell [smel] smelt [smelt] (smelled) smelt [smelt] (smelled)

speak [spi:k] spoke [spəʊk] spoken
['spəʊkən]
spend [spend] spent [spent] spent
[spent]
stand [stænd] stood [stʊd] stood [stod]
steal [sti:l] stole [stəʊl] stolen
['stəʊlən]
swim [swim] swam [swæm] swum
[swʌm]
take [teik] took [tu:k] taken ['teɪkən]
teach [ti:tʃ] taught [tɔ:t] taught [tɔ:t]
tell [tel] told [təʊld] told [təʊld]

think [θɪŋk] thought [θɔ:t] thought
[θɔ:t]
throw [θrəʊ] threw [θru:] thrown
[θrəʊn]
understand [ˌʌndə'stænd] understood
[ˌʌndə'stʊd] understood [ˌʌndə'stʊd]
wake (up) [weɪk] woke (up) [wəʊk]
woken (up) ['wɒkən]
wear [weə] wore [wɜ:] worn [wɔ:n]
win [wɪn] won [wʌn] won [wʌn]
write [raɪt] wrote [rəʊt] written
['rɪn]

CONTENTS

ROUND-UP LESSONS	3	Lesson 9	122
Lesson 1	4	Text "Twelve Flowers of the Year"	131
Personal Identification	—	Lesson 10	136
Text "A Friendly Family"	15	Text "The Earth Is in Danger"	144
Lesson 2	17	Lesson 11. Review 1	147
Daily Life	—	The Geography and Political Outlook of the UK	152
Text "Peter's Holiday"	27	Lesson 12	—
Lesson 3	30	Text "The Land and the People of Great Britain"	160
Free Time	—	Lesson 13	165
Text "Whatever Happened to Uncle Oscar", part I	40	Text "The Queen and Parliament"	175
Lesson 4	45	Lesson 14	179
Travelling	—	Text "The British Way of Life"	186
Text "My Friend Is an Alien"	56	Health and Body Care	190
Lesson 5	62	Lesson 15	—
So Many Countries So Many Customs	—	Text "At the Doctor's"	200
Text "More about British and Russian Traditions"	74	Lesson 16	203
BASIC COURSE	79	Text "Ronald Is Really Ill"	213
The World Around Us	80	Lesson 17	216
Lesson 6	—	Text "What We Should Do to Keep Fit"	226
Text "Continents and Countries"	88	Lesson 18. Review 2	228
Lesson 7	96	Sports and Games	231
Text "English-speaking Countries"	106		
Lesson 8	109		
Text "Animals in Danger"	118		

Lesson 19	231
Text "Popular British Sports and Games"	239
Lesson 20	242
Text "He Was Only Wrong by Two!"	250
apping	254
Lesson 21	—
Text "At the Butcher's" . . .	263

Lesson 22	265
Text "At Selfridge's"	274
Lesson 23, Review 3	277
Reference Grammar	280
English-Russian Vocabulary .	293
Irregular Verbs	327

Учебное издание

Верещагина Ирина Николаевна
Афанасьева Ольга Васильевна

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

Учебник для V класса
школ с углубленным изучением
английского языка,
лицеев, гимназий, колледжей

Центр германских языков

Руководитель Центра *В. В. Ковылова*

Зам. руководителя *Н. И. Максименко*

Редактор *Е. И. Бухарова*

Художественный редактор *Э. К. Реали*

Художники *В. Ю. Вуксман, Е. А. Дергачева*

Технический редактор *Н. П. Ежикова*

Корректор *Э. Ф. Юрская*

Палоговая льгота — Общероссийский классификатор продукции ОК 005-93—953000.
Изд. лиц. Серия ИД № 05824 от 12.09.01. Подписано в печать с дискетки 26.05.08.
Формат 70×90^{1/16}. Бумага офсетная. Гарнитура Школьная. Печать офсетная.

Уч.-изд. л. 16,82±0,47 фора. Доп. тираж 50 000 экз. Заказ № 20585 а-гн.

Открытое акционерное общество «Издательство «Просвещение»: 127521, Москва, 3-й проезд
Марьиной рощи, 41.

Открытое акционерное общество «Смоленский полиграфический комбинат», 214020,
г. Смоленск, ул. Смольянинова, 1.

So do (am...) I.

И я (он, она...) тоже.



Alice **is** at school.

So **am** I.

Alice **has got** a cat.

So **have** I.

Alice **lives** in Moscow.

So **does** Pete.

Bob **likes** milk.

So **do** I.

They **can** swim.

So **can** she.

You **will go** to the US.

So **shall** we.

He **was** in London in 1995.

So **were** we.

My cat **played** a lot.

So **did** mine.

I **had** a dog last year.

So **did (had)** she.

They **could** read, but not very well.

So **could** they.

He **has broken** a plate.

So **has** she.

Neither do (am...) I.

И я (он, мы ...) тоже.



Kate **is not** at home.

Neither **is** Nick.

Bob **hasn't got** a computer.

Neither **has** Ann.

They **don't live** in Paris.

Neither **do** we.

Alan **doesn't like** soup.

Neither **do** I.

Bill **can't** write.

Neither **can** Ann.

They **won't go** to Kiev.

Neither **shall (will)** I.

You **were not** in Africa last week.

Neither **was** she.

The dog **didn't drink** milk.

Neither **did** the cat.

They **didn't have** a car 3 years ago.

Neither **did** we.

Betty **couldn't read** when she was 5.

Neither **could** he.

I **haven't finished** reading the book.

Neither **have** I.

S **TUDENT'S BOOK**



ISBN 978-5-09-019721-2



9 785090 197212



ПРОСВЕЩЕНИЕ
ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО